cisco.



Security for VPNs with IPsec Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS Release 15M&T

Americas Headquarters

Cisco Systems, Inc. 170 West Tasman Drive San Jose, CA 95134-1706 USA http://www.cisco.com Tel: 408 526-4000 800 553-NETS (6387) Fax: 408 527-0883 THE SPECIFICATIONS AND INFORMATION REGARDING THE PRODUCTS IN THIS MANUAL ARE SUBJECT TO CHANGE WITHOUT NOTICE. ALL STATEMENTS, INFORMATION, AND RECOMMENDATIONS IN THIS MANUAL ARE BELIEVED TO BE ACCURATE BUT ARE PRESENTED WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. USERS MUST TAKE FULL RESPONSIBILITY FOR THEIR APPLICATION OF ANY PRODUCTS.

THE SOFTWARE LICENSE AND LIMITED WARRANTY FOR THE ACCOMPANYING PRODUCT ARE SET FORTH IN THE INFORMATION PACKET THAT SHIPPED WITH THE PRODUCT AND ARE INCORPORATED HEREIN BY THIS REFERENCE. IF YOU ARE UNABLE TO LOCATE THE SOFTWARE LICENSE OR LIMITED WARRANTY, CONTACT YOUR CISCO REPRESENTATIVE FOR A COPY.

The Cisco implementation of TCP header compression is an adaptation of a program developed by the University of California, Berkeley (UCB) as part of UCB's public domain version of the UNIX operating system. All rights reserved. Copyright © 1981, Regents of the University of California.

NOTWITHSTANDING ANY OTHER WARRANTY HEREIN, ALL DOCUMENT FILES AND SOFTWARE OF THESE SUPPLIERS ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" WITH ALL FAULTS. CISCO AND THE ABOVE-NAMED SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THOSE OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OR ARISING FROM A COURSE OF DEALING, USAGE, OR TRADE PRACTICE.

IN NO EVENT SHALL CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, LOST PROFITS OR LOSS OR DAMAGE TO DATA ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THIS MANUAL, EVEN IF CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

Any Internet Protocol (IP) addresses and phone numbers used in this document are not intended to be actual addresses and phone numbers. Any examples, command display output, network topology diagrams, and other figures included in the document are shown for illustrative purposes only. Any use of actual IP addresses or phone numbers in illustrative content is unintentional and coincidental.

Cisco and the Cisco logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Cisco and/or its affiliates in the U.S. and other countries. To view a list of Cisco trademarks, go to this URL: https://www.cisco.com/go/trademarks. Third-party trademarks mentioned are the property of their respective owners. The use of the word partner does not imply a partnership relationship between Cisco and any other company. (1721R)

© 2018 Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.



CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1

Configuring Security for VPNs with IPsec 1 Finding Feature Information 1 Prerequisites for Configuring Security for VPNs with IPsec 2 Restrictions for Configuring Security for VPNs with IPsec 2 Information About Configuring Security for VPNs with IPsec 3 Supported Standards 3 Supported Encapsulation 5 IPsec Functionality Overview 5 IKEv1 Transform Sets 5 IKEv2 Transform Sets 5 Transform Sets: A Combination of Security Protocols and Algorithms 6 About Transform Sets 6 Cisco IOS Suite-B Support for IKE and IPsec Cryptographic Algorithms 8 Suite-B Requirements 8 Where to Find Suite-B Configuration Information 9 Nested IPsec Tunnels 9 How to Configure IPsec VPNs 10 Creating Crypto Access Lists 10 What to Do Next 11 Configuring Transform Sets for IKEv1 and IKEv2 Proposals 11 Restrictions 11 Configuring Transform Sets for IKEv1 12 Configuring Transform Sets for IKEv2 13 Creating Crypto Map Sets 16 Creating Static Crypto Maps 16 Creating Dynamic Crypto Maps 19

Creating Crypto Map Entries to Establish Manual SAs 22
Applying Crypto Map Sets to Interfaces 25
Configuration Examples for IPsec VPN 26
Example: Configuring AES-Based Static Crypto Map 26
Additional References for Configuring Security for VPNs with IPsec 27
Feature Information for Configuring Security for VPNs with IPsec 29
Glossary 30

33

CHAPTER 2 IPsec Virtual Tunnel Interfaces

Finding Feature Information 33 Restrictions for IPsec Virtual Tunnel Interfaces 33 Information About IPsec Virtual Tunnel Interfaces 34 Benefits of Using IPsec Virtual Tunnel Interfaces 35 Static Virtual Tunnel Interfaces 35 Dynamic Virtual Tunnel Interfaces 35 Traffic Encryption with the IPsec Virtual Tunnel Interface 36 Multi-SA Support for Dynamic Virtual Tunnel Interfaces for IKEv1 37 Multi-SA Support for Dynamic Virtual Tunnel Interfaces for IKEv2 38 Dynamic Virtual Tunnel Interface Life Cycle 39 Routing with IPsec Virtual Tunnel Interfaces 39 FlexVPN Mixed Mode Support 39 IKE Profile Based Tunnel Selection 39 Auto Tunnel Mode Support in IPsec 40 IPSec Mixed Mode Support for VTI 40 How to Configure IPsec Virtual Tunnel Interfaces 40 Configuring Static IPsec Virtual Tunnel Interfaces 40 Configuring BGP over IPsec Virtual Tunnel Interfaces 42 Configuring Dynamic IPsec Virtual Tunnel Interfaces 44 Configuring Multi-SA Support for Dynamic Virtual Tunnel Interfaces Using IKEv1 46 Configuring Multi-SA Support for Dynamic Virtual Tunnel Interfaces Using IKEv2 49 Defining an AAA Attribute List 49 Configuring the VRF 50 Configuring Internet Key Exchange Version 2 (IKEv2) 51 Configuring IPsec Mixed Mode Support for SVTIs 62

Configuring IPsec Mixed Mode Support for Dynamic VTIs 64
Configuration Examples for IPsec Virtual Tunnel Interfaces 66
Example: Static Virtual Tunnel Interface with IPsec 66
Example: Verifying the Results for the IPsec Static Virtual Tunnel Interface 68
Example: VRF-Aware Static Virtual Tunnel Interface 69
Example: Static Virtual Tunnel Interface with QoS 69
Example: Static Virtual Tunnel Interface with Virtual Firewall 70
Example: Dynamic Virtual Tunnel Interface Easy VPN Server 71
Example: Verifying the Results for the Dynamic Virtual Tunnel Interface Easy VPN Server 72
Example: Dynamic Virtual Tunnel Interface Easy VPN Client 73
Example: Verifying the Results for the Dynamic Virtual Tunnel Interface Easy VPN Client 74
Example: VRF-Aware IPsec with a Dynamic VTI When VRF Is Configured Under a Virtual Template 74
Example: VRF-Aware IPsec with Dynamic VTI When VRF Is Configured Under a Virtual Template with the Gateway Option in an IPsec Profile 75
Example: VRF-Aware IPsec with a Dynamic VTI When VRF Is Configured Under an ISAKMP Profile 76
Example: VRF-Aware IPsec with a Dynamic VTI When VRF Is Configured Under an ISAKMP Profile and a Gateway Option in an IPsec Profile 77
Example: VRF-Aware IPsec with a Dynamic VTI When a VRF Is Configured Under Both a Virtual Template and an ISAKMP Profile 78
Example: Configuring Multi-SA Support for Dynamic VTI Using IKEv2 79
Example: Dynamic Virtual Tunnel Interface with Virtual Firewall 81
Example: Dynamic Virtual Tunnel Interface with QoS 82
Example: Dynamic Virtual Tunnel Interface Using GRE with IPsec Protection 82
Additional References for IPsec Virtual Tunnel Interface 83
Feature Information for IPsec Virtual Tunnel Interfaces 84
L2TP IPsec Support for NAT and PAT Windows Clients 89
Finding Feature Information 89
Prerequisites for L2TP IPsec Support for NAT and PAT Windows Clients 90
Restrictions for L2TP IPsec Support for NAT and PAT Windows Clients 90
Information About L2TP IPsec Support for NAT and PAT Windows Clients 90

How L2TP IPsec Support for NAT and PAT Windows Clients Works 90

CHAPTER 3

How to Enable L2TP IPsec Support for NAT and PAT Windows Clients 92

	Enchling I 2TD IDeae Support 02				
	Configuration Examples for L 2TD IDeas Support for NAT and DAT Windows Clients 04				
	Examples Description Conference on 21				
	Example: Dynamic Map Configuration 94				
	Additional References 96				
	Feature Information for L21P IPsec Support for NAT and PAT Windows Clients 97				
CHAPTER 4	Deleting Crypto Sessions of Revoked Peer Certificates 99				
	Finding Feature Information 99				
	Restrictions for Deleting Crypto Sessions of Revoked Peer Certificates 99				
	Information About Deleting Crypto Sessions of Revoked Peer Certificates 100				
	How a Crypto Session is Deleted 100				
	How to Enable Deletion of Crypto Sessions for Revoked Peer Certificates 100				
	Enabling Deletion of Crypto Sessions 100				
	Verifying the Delete Crypto Session Capability for a Revoked Peer Certificate 101				
	Configuration Examples for Deleting Crypto Sessions of Revoked Peer Certificates 102				
	Example: Enabling Deletion of Crypto Sessions for an IKE Session 102				
	Example: Enabling Deletion of Crypto Sessions for an IKEv2 Session 102				
	Additional References for Deleting Crypto Sessions of Revoked Peers 103				
	Feature Information for Deleting Crypto Sessions of Revoked Peer Certificates 104				
CHAPTER 5	SafeNet IPsec VPN Client Support 105				
	Finding Feature Information 105				
	Prerequisites for SafeNet IPsec VPN Client Support 105				
	Restrictions for SafeNet IPsec VPN Client Support 106				
	Information About SafeNet IPsec VPN Client Support 106				
	ISAKMP Profile and ISAKMP Keyring Configurations Background 106				
	Local Termination Address or Interface 106				
	Benefit of SafeNet IPsec VPN Client Support 106				
	How to Configure SafeNet IPsec VPN Client Support 107				
	Limiting an ISAKMP Profile to a Local Termination Address or Interface 107				
	Limiting a Keyring to a Local Termination Address or Interface 108				
	Monitoring and Maintaining SafeNet IPsec VPN Client Support 109				
	Examples 109				
	Troubleshooting SafeNet IPsec VPN Client Support 110				

I

	Configuration Examples for SafeNet IPsec VPN Client Support 111					
	ISAKMP Profile Bound to a Local Interface Example 111					
	ISAKMP Keyring Bound to a Local Interface Example 111					
	ISAKMP Keyring Bound to a Local IP Address Example 111					
	ISAKMP Keyring Bound to an IP Address and Limited to a VRF Example 111					
	Additional References 111					
	Related DocumentsStandards 112					
	MIBs 112					
	RFCs 112					
	Technical Assistance 112					
CHAPTER 6	Ability to Disable Extended Authentication for Static IPsec Peers 113					
	Finding Feature Information 113					
	Feature Overview 113					
	Benefits 114					
	Restrictions 114					
	Related Documents 114					
	Supported Standards MIBs and RFCs 114					
	Prerequisites 114					
	Configuration Tasks 115					
	Disabling Xauth for Static IPsec Peers 115					
	Configuration Examples 115					
	Disabling Xauth for Static IPsec Peers Configuration 115					
	Feature Information for Ability to Disable Xauth for Static IPsec Peers 116					
CHAPTER 7	Crypto Conditional Debug Support 117					
	Finding Feature Information 117					
	Prerequisites for Crypto Conditional Debug Support 117					
	Restrictions for Crypto Conditional Debug Support 118					
	Information About Crypto Conditional Debug Support 118					
	Supported Condition Types 118					
	How to Enable Crypto Conditional Debug Support 119					
	Enabling Crypto Conditional Debug Messages 119					
	Performance Considerations 119					

Disable Crypto Debug Conditions 119	
Enabling Crypto Error Debug Messages 121	
debug crypto error CLI 121	
Configuration Examples for the Crypto Conditional Debug CLIs	122
Enabling Crypto Conditional Debugging Example 122	
Disabling Crypto Conditional Debugging Example 122	
Additional References 123	

CHAPTER 8 VPN Acceleration Module 125

Finding Fe	ature Information 125
Prerequisit	es for VPN Acceleration Module 125
Information	n about VPN Acceleration Module (VAM) 126
VPN Ac	celeration Module (VAM) Overview 126
Benefits	126
How To Co	onfigure VPN Acceleration Module (VAM) 129
Creating	IKE Policies 129
Configu	ring IPsec 132
Creati	ing Crypto Access Lists 132
Config	guring Transform Sets for IKEv1 133
Creati	ing Static Crypto Maps 134
Verify	ring the Configuration 137
Troubles	shooting Tips 139
Monitori	ing and Maintaining the VPN Acceleration Module 140
Configurat	ion Examples for VPN Acceleration 141
Example	e: Configuring IKE Policies 141
Example	e: Configuring IPsec Configuration 141
Additional	References for VPN Acceleration Module 142
Feature Inf	Cormation for VPN Acceleration Module 143
Glossary	145

CHAPTER 9 Option to Disable Hardware Crypto EngineFailover to Software Crypto Engine 147 Finding Feature Information 147 Prerequisites for Option to Disable Hardware Crypto Engine Failover to Software Crypto Engine 148

I

Information About Option to Disable Hardware Crypto Engine Failover to Software Crypto Engine 148
Hardware Crypto Engine Failover to the Software Crypto Engine Overview 148
Option to Disable Hardware Crypto Engine Failover 148
How to Configure Option to Disable Hardware Crypto Engine Failover to Software Crypto Engine 148
Disabling Hardware Crypto Engine Failover to the Software Crypto Engine 148
Configuration Examples for Option to Disable Hardware Crypto Engine Failover to Software Crypto Engine 149
Disabled Hardware Crypto Engine Failover Example 149
Additional References 150
RFC 430x IPsec Support 153
Finding Feature Information 153
Information About RFC 430x IPsec Support 153
RFC 430x IPsec Support Phase 1 153
RFC 430x IPsec Support Phase 2 154
How to Configure RFC 430x IPsec Support 154
Configuring RFC 430x IPsec Support Globally 154
Configuring RFC 430x IPsec Support Per Crypto Map 155

Configuration Examples for RFC 430x IPsec Support 157

Example: Configuring RFC 430x IPsec Support Globally 157

Example: Configuring RFC 430x IPsec Support Per Crypto Map 158

Additional References for RFC 430x IPsec Support 159

Feature Information for RFC 430x IPsec Support 159

CHAPTER 11

CHAPTER 10

Session Initiation Protocol Triggered VPN 161

Information about VPN-SIP 161

Components for VPN-SIP Solution 161 Sesssion Initiation Protocol 162 VPN-SIP Solution 162 Feature at a glance **162** SIP Call Flow 163 IKEv2 Negotiation 164

Supported Platforms 165 Prerequisites for VPN-SIP 166 Restrictions for VPN-SIP 166 How to Configure VPN-SIP 167 Configuring VPN-SIP 167 Verifying VPN-SIP on a Local Router 170 Verifying VPN-SIP on a Remote Router 172 Configuration Examples for VPN-SIP 173 Configuration Examples for VPN-SIP 173 Troubleshooting for VPN-SIP 174 Additional References for VPN-SIP 181 Feature Information for VPN-SIP 182



CHAPTER

Configuring Security for VPNs with IPsec

This module describes how to configure basic IPsec VPNs. IPsec is a framework of open standards developed by the IETF. It provides security for the transmission of sensitive information over unprotected networks such as the Internet. IPsec acts at the network layer, protecting and authenticating IP packets between participating IPsec devices ("peers"), such as Cisco routers.

Note

Security threats, as well as the cryptographic technologies to help protect against them, are constantly changing. For more information about the latest Cisco cryptographic recommendations, see the Next Generation Encryption (NGE) white paper.

- Finding Feature Information, on page 1
- Prerequisites for Configuring Security for VPNs with IPsec, on page 2
- Restrictions for Configuring Security for VPNs with IPsec, on page 2
- Information About Configuring Security for VPNs with IPsec, on page 3
- How to Configure IPsec VPNs, on page 10
- Configuration Examples for IPsec VPN, on page 26
- Additional References for Configuring Security for VPNs with IPsec, on page 27
- Feature Information for Configuring Security for VPNs with IPsec, on page 29
- Glossary, on page 30

Finding Feature Information

Your software release may not support all the features documented in this module. For the latest caveats and feature information, see **Bug Search** Tool and the release notes for your platform and software release. To find information about the features documented in this module, and to see a list of the releases in which each feature is supported, see the feature information table.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Prerequisites for Configuring Security for VPNs with IPsec

IKE Configuration

You must configure Internet Key Exchange (IKE) as described in the module *Configuring Internet Key Exchange for IPsec VPNs*.

Note If you decide not to use IKE, you must still disable it as described in the module *Configuring Internet Key Exchange for IPsec VPNs.*

Ensure Access Lists Are Compatible with IPsec

IKE uses UDP port 500. The IPsec encapsulating security payload (ESP) and authentication header (AH) protocols use protocol numbers 50 and 51, respectively. Ensure that your access lists are configured so that traffic from protocol 50, 51, and UDP port 500 are not blocked at interfaces used by IPsec. In some cases, you might need to add a statement to your access lists to explicitly permit this traffic.

Restrictions for Configuring Security for VPNs with IPsec

Cisco IPsec Policy Map MIB

The MIB OID objects are displayed only when an IPsec session is up.

Discontiguous Access Control Lists

Crypto maps using access control lists (ACLs) that have discontiguous masks are not supported.

IPv4 Packets with IP Options Set

The following platforms do not support encrypting IPv4 packets with IP options set:

Cisco ASR1001 and ASR1000 routers with ESP-5, ESP-10, ESP-20, and ESP-40.

Physical Interface and Crypto Map

A crypto map on a physical interface is not supported, if the physical interface is the source interface of a tunnel protection interface.

NAT Configuration

If you use Network Address Translation (NAT), you should configure static NAT so that IPsec works properly. In general, NAT should occur before the router performs IPsec encapsulation; in other words, IPsec should work with global addresses.

Unicast IP Datagram Application Only

IPsec can be applied to unicast IP datagrams only. Because the IPsec Working Group has not yet addressed the issue of group key distribution, IPsec does not currently work with multicasts or broadcast IP datagrams.

IPv6 BFD with ISM

IPv6 BFD with ISM is not supported on ISRG2 routers.

Unsupported Interface Types

- Crypto VPNs are not supported on the bridge domain interfaces (BDI).
- Crypto maps are not supported on tunnel interface and port-channel interface.

Information About Configuring Security for VPNs with IPsec

Supported Standards

Cisco implements the following standards with this feature:

• IPsec—IPsec is a framework of open standards that provides data confidentiality, data integrity, and data authentication between participating peers. IPsec provides these security services at the IP layer; IPsec uses IKE to handle negotiation of protocols and algorithms based on the local policy, and generate the encryption and authentication keys to be used by IPsec. IPsec can be used to protect one or more data flows between a pair of hosts, between a pair of security gateways, or between a security gateway and a host.



Note The term IPsec is sometimes used to describe the entire protocol of IPsec data services and IKE security protocols, and is also sometimes used to describe only the data services.

 IKE (IKEv1 and IKEv2)—A hybrid protocol that implements Oakley and SKEME key exchanges inside the Internet Security Association and Key Management Protocol (ISAKMP) framework. While IKE is used with other protocols, its initial implementation is with the IPsec protocol. IKE provides authentication of IPsec peers, negotiates IPsec security associations, and establishes IPsec keys.

The component technologies implemented for IPsec include:



Note

Cisco no longer recommends using DES, 3DES, MD5 (including HMAC variant), and Diffie-Hellman (DH) groups 1, 2 and 5; instead, you should use AES, SHA and DH Groups 14 or higher. For more information about the latest Cisco cryptographic recommendations, see the Next Generation Encryption (NGE) white paper.

• AES—Advanced Encryption Standard. A cryptographic algorithm that protects sensitive, unclassified information. AES is a privacy transform for IPsec and IKE and has been developed to replace DES. AES

is designed to be more secure than DES. AES offers a larger key size, while ensuring that the only known approach to decrypt a message is for an intruder to try every possible key. AES has a variable key length—the algorithm can specify a 128-bit key (the default), a 192-bit key, or a 256-bit key.

DES—Data Encryption Standard. An algorithm that is used to encrypt packet data. Cisco software
implements the mandatory 56-bit DES-CBC with Explicit IV. Cipher Block Chaining (CBC) requires
an initialization vector (IV) to start encryption. The IV is explicitly given in the IPsec packet. For
backwards compatibility, Cisco IOS IPsec also implements the RFC 1829 version of ESP DES-CBC.

Cisco IOS also implements Triple DES (168-bit) encryption, depending on the software versions available for a specific platform. Cisco no longer recommends Triple DES (3DES).



Note

Cisco IOS images with strong encryption (including, but not limited to 56-bit data encryption feature sets) are subject to United States government export controls, and have a limited distribution. Images to be installed outside the United States require an export license. Customer orders might be denied or subject to delay due to United States government regulations. Contact your sales representative or distributor for more information, or send an e-mail to export@cisco.com.

- SEAL—Software Encryption Algorithm. An alternative algorithm to software-based DES, 3DES, and AES. SEAL encryption uses a 160-bit encryption key and has a lower impact on the CPU when compared to other software-based algorithms.
- SHA-2 and SHA-1 family (HMAC variant)—Secure Hash Algorithm (SHA) 1 and 2. Both SHA-1 and SHA-2 are hash algorithms used to authenticate packet data and verify the integrity verification mechanisms for the IKE protocol. HMAC is a variant that provides an additional level of hashing. SHA-2 family adds the SHA-256 bit hash algorithm and SHA-384 bit hash algorithm. This functionality is part of the Suite-B requirements that comprises four user interface suites of cryptographic algorithms for use with IKE and IPSec that are described in RFC 4869. Each suite consists of an encryption algorithm, a digital signature algorithm, a key agreement algorithm, and a hash or message digest algorithm. See the Configuring Security for VPNs with IPsec feature module for more detailed information about Cisco IOS Suite-B support.
- Diffie-Hellman—A public-key cryptography protocol that allows two parties to establish a shared secret over an unsecure communications channel. Diffie-Hellman is used within IKE to establish session keys. It supports 768-bit (the default), 1024-bit, 1536-bit, 2048-bit, 3072-bit, and 4096-bit DH groups. It also supports a 2048-bit DH group with a 256-bit subgroup, and 256-bit and 384-bit elliptic curve DH (ECDH). Cisco recommends using 2048-bit or larger DH key exchange, or ECDH key exchange.
- MD5 (Hash-based Message Authentication Code (HMAC) variant)—Message digest algorithm 5 (MD5) is a hash algorithm. HMAC is a keyed hash variant used to authenticate data.

IPsec as implemented in Cisco software supports the following additional standards:

- AH—Authentication Header. A security protocol, which provides data authentication and optional anti-replay services. AH is embedded in the data to be protected (a full IP datagram).
- ESP—Encapsulating Security Payload. A security protocol, which provides data privacy services and optional data authentication, and anti-replay services. ESP encapsulates the data to be protected.

Supported Encapsulation

IPsec works with the following serial encapsulations: Frame Relay, High-Level Data-Links Control (HDLC), and PPP.

IPsec also works with Generic Routing Encapsulation (GRE) and IPinIP Layer 3, Layer 2 Forwarding (L2F), Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol (L2TP), Data Link Switching+ (DLSw+), and Source Route Bridging (SRB) tunneling protocols; however, multipoint tunnels are not supported. Other Layer 3 tunneling protocols may not be supported for use with IPsec.

Because the IPsec Working Group has not yet addressed the issue of group key distribution, IPsec currently cannot be used to protect group traffic (such as broadcast or multicast traffic).

IPsec Functionality Overview

IPsec provides the following network security services. (In general, the local security policy dictates the use of one or more of these services.)

- Data confidentiality—The IPsec sender can encrypt packets before transmitting them across a network.
- Data integrity—The IPsec receiver can authenticate packets sent by the IPsec sender to ensure that the data has not been altered during transmission.
- Data origin authentication—The IPsec receiver can authenticate the source of the sent IPsec packets. This service is dependent upon the data integrity service.
- Anti-replay-The IPsec receiver can detect and reject replayed packets.

IPsec provides secure *tunnels* between two peers, such as two routers. You define which packets are considered sensitive and should be sent through these secure tunnels, and you define the parameters that should be used to protect these sensitive packets by specifying the characteristics of these tunnels. When the IPsec peer recognizes a sensitive packet, the peer sets up the appropriate secure tunnel and sends the packet through the tunnel to the remote peer. (The use of the term *tunnel* in this chapter does not refer to using IPsec in tunnel mode.)

More accurately, these *tunnels* are sets of security associations (SAs) that are established between two IPsec peers. The SAs define the protocols and algorithms to be applied to sensitive packets and specify the keying material to be used by the two peers. SAs are unidirectional and are established per security protocol (AH or ESP).

Multiple IPsec tunnels can exist between two peers to secure different data streams, with each tunnel using a separate set of SAs. For example, some data streams only need to be authenticated, while other data streams must both be encrypted and authenticated.

IKEv1 Transform Sets

An Internet Key Exchange version 1 (IKEv1) transform set represents a certain combination of security protocols and algorithms. During the IPsec SA negotiation, the peers agree to use a particular transform set for protecting a particular data flow.

IKEv2 Transform Sets

An Internet Key Exchange version 2 (IKEv2) proposal is a set of transforms used in the negotiation of IKEv2 SA as part of the IKE_SA_INIT exchange. An IKEv2 proposal is regarded as complete only when it has at

least an encryption algorithm, an integrity algorithm, and a Diffie-Hellman (DH) group configured. If no proposal is configured and attached to an IKEv2 policy, then the default proposal is used in the negotiation. The default proposal is a collection of commonly used algorithms which are as follows:

```
encryption aes-cbc-128 3des
integrity shal md5
group 5 2
```

Although the **crypto ikev2 proposal** command is similar to the **crypto isakmp policy priority** command, the IKEv2 proposal differs as follows:

- An IKEv2 proposal allows configuration of one or more transforms for each transform type.
- An IKEv2 proposal does not have any associated priority.



To use IKEv2 proposals in negotiation, they must be attached to IKEv2 policies. If a proposal is not configured, then the default IKEv2 proposal is used with the default IKEv2 policy.

Transform Sets: A Combination of Security Protocols and Algorithms

About Transform Sets



Cisco no longer recommends using ah-md5-hmac, esp-md5-hmac, esp-des or esp-3des. Instead, you should use ah-sha-hmac, esp-sha-hmac or esp-aes. For more information about the latest Cisco cryptographic recommendations, see the Next Generation Encryption (NGE) white paper.

A transform set represents a certain combination of security protocols and algorithms. During the IPsec SA negotiation, the peers agree to use a particular transform set for protecting a particular data flow.

During IPsec security association negotiations with IKE, peers search for an identical transform set for both peers. When such a transform set is found, it is selected and applied to the protected traffic as part of both peers' IPsec SAs. (With manually established SAs, there is no negotiation with the peer, so both sides must specify the same transform set.)

The table below shows allowed transform combinations.

Tal	ble	1: All	lowed	Transf	form	Comb	oinations	
-----	-----	--------	-------	--------	------	------	-----------	--

Transform Type	Transform	Description	
AH Transform (<i>Pick only one</i> .)	ah-md5-hmac	AH with the MD5 (Message Digest 5) (an HMAC variant) authentication algorithm. (No longer recommended).	
	ah-sha-hmac	AH with the SHA (Secure Hash Algorithm) (an HMAC variant) authentication algorithm.	

Transform Type	Transform	Description	
ESP Encryption Transform (<i>Pick</i>	esp-aes	ESP with the 128-bit Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) encryption algorithm.	
only one.)	esp-gcm esp-gmac	The esp-gcm and esp-gmac transforms are ESPs with either a 128-bit or a 256-bit encryption algorithm. The default for either of these transforms is 128 bits.	
		Both esp-gcm and esp-gmac transforms cannot be configured together with any other ESP transform within the same crypto IPsec transform set using the crypto ipsec transform-set command.	
		The esp-gcm and esp-gmac combinations are not supported on the Cisco ASR 1001 routers with the following ESPs:	
		• ESP-5	
		• ESP-10	
		• ESP-20	
		• ESP-40	
	esp-aes 192	ESP with the 192-bit AES encryption algorithm.	
	esp-aes 256	ESP with the 256-bit AES encryption algorithm.	
	esp-des	ESP with the 56-bit Data Encryption Standard (DES) encryption algorithm. (No longer recommended).	
	esp-3des	ESP with the 168-bit DES encryption algorithm (3DES or Triple DES). (No longer recommended).	
	esp-null	Null encryption algorithm.	
	esp-seal	ESP with the 160-bit SEAL encryption algorithm.	
ESP Authentication	esp-md5-hmac	ESP with the MD5 (HMAC variant) authentication algorithm. (No longer recommended).	
only one.)	esp-sha-hmac	ESP with the SHA (HMAC variant) authentication algorithm.	
IP Compressioncomp-lzsIP compression with the LenTransformIP compression		IP compression with the Lempel-Ziv-Stac (LZS) algorithm	

Note

Security threats, as well as the cryptographic technologies to help protect against them, are constantly changing. For more information about the latest Cisco cryptographic recommendations, see the Next Generation Encryption (NGE) white paper.

Cisco IOS Suite-B Support for IKE and IPsec Cryptographic Algorithms

Suite-B adds support for four user interface suites of cryptographic algorithms for use with IKE and IPSec that are described in RFC 4869. Each suite consists of an encryption algorithm, a digital signature algorithm, a key agreement algorithm, and a hash or message digest algorithm.

Suite-B is not supported on the following hardware platforms:

- Cisco ASR1001
- ESP-5
- ESP-10
- ESP-20
- ESP-40

Suite-B has the following cryptographic algorithms:

- Suite-B-GCM-128-Provides ESP integrity protection, confidentiality, and IPsec encryption algorithms
 that use the 128-bit AES using Galois and Counter Mode (AES-GCM) described in RFC 4106. This
 suite should be used when ESP integrity protection and encryption are both needed.
- Suite-B-GCM-256-Provides ESP integrity protection and confidentiality using 256-bit AES-GCM described in RFC 4106. This suite should be used when ESP integrity protection and encryption are both needed.
- Suite-B-GMAC-128-Provides ESP integrity protection using 128-bit AES- Galois Message Authentication Code (GMAC) described in RFC 4543, but does not provide confidentiality. This suite should be used only when there is no need for ESP encryption.
- Suite-B-GMAC-256-Provides ESP integrity protection using 256-bit AES-GMAC described in RFC 4543, but does not provide confidentiality. This suite should be used only when there is no need for ESP encryption.

IPSec encryption algorithms use AES-GCM when encryption is required and AES-GMAC for message integrity without encryption.

IKE negotiation uses AES Cipher Block Chaining (CBC) mode to provide encryption and Secure Hash Algorithm (SHA)-2 family containing the SHA-256 and SHA-384 hash algorithms, as defined in RFC 4634, to provide the hash functionality. Diffie-Hellman using Elliptic Curves (ECP), as defined in RFC 4753, is used for key exchange and the Elliptic Curve Digital Signature Algorithm (ECDSA), as defined in RFC 4754, to provide authentication.

Suite-B Requirements

Suite-B imposes the following software crypto engine requirements for IKE and IPsec:

- HMAC-SHA256 and HMAC-SHA384 are used as pseudorandom functions; the integrity check within the IKE protocol is used. Optionally, HMAC-SHA512 can be used.
- Elliptic curve groups 19 (256-bit ECP curve) and 20 (384-bit ECP curve) are used as the Diffie-Hellman group in IKE. Optionally, group 21 (521-bit ECP curve) can be used.
- The Elliptic Curve Digital Signature Algorithm (ECDSA) algorithm (256-bit and 384-bit curves) is used for the signature operation within X.509 certificates.

- GCM (16 byte ICV) and GMAC is used for ESP (128-bit and 256-bit keys). Optionally, 192-bit keys can be used.
- Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) support for validation of X.509 certificates using ECDSA signatures must be used.
- PKI support for generating certificate requests using ECDSA signatures and for importing the issued certificates into IOS must be used.
- IKEV2 support for allowing the ECDSA signature (ECDSA-sig) as authentication method must be used.

Where to Find Suite-B Configuration Information

Suite-B configuration support is described in the following documents:

- For more information on SHA-2 family (HMAC variant) and Elliptic Curve (EC) key pair configuration, see the *Configuring Internet Key Exchange for IPsec VPNs* feature module.
- For more information on configuring a transform for an integrity algorithm type, see the "Configuring the IKEv2 Proposal" section in the *Configuring Internet Key Exchange Version 2 (IKEv2) and FlexVPN Site-to-Site* feature module.
- For more information on configuring the ECDSA-sig to be the authentication method for IKEv2, see the "Configuring IKEv2 Profile (Basic)" section in the *Configuring Internet Key Exchange Version 2 (IKEv2)* and FlexVPN Site-to-Site feature module.
- For more information on configuring elliptic curve Diffie-Hellman (ECDH) support for IPsec SA negotiation, see the *Configuring Internet Key Exchange for IPsec VPNs* and *Configuring Internet Key Exchange Version 2 and FlexVPN* feature modules.

For more information on the Suite-B support for certificate enrollment for a PKI, see the *Configuring Certificate Enrollment for a PKI* feature module.

Nested IPsec Tunnels

The following figure illustrates nested IPsec tunnels, where a tunnel is transported inside another tunnel.

Figure 1: Nested IPsec Tunnels



IPsec supports nested tunnels, where a tunnel is transported inside another tunnel. For example, in the above topology Router A has IPsec tunnels with Peer 1 and Peer 2, wherein the tunnel with Peer 2 is transported inside the tunnel with Peer 1. The following are sample configurations to establish nested IPsec tunnels on Router A, Peer 1 and Peer 2:

Configuration snippet on Router A

```
interface Tunnel1
ip address 172.16.0.1 255.255.255.0
```

```
tunnel source FastEthernet0/0
tunnel destination 10.0.0.2
tunnel protection ipsec profile prof1
!
interface Tunnel2
ip address 192.168.1.1 255.255.255.0
tunnel source Tunnel1
tunnel destination 10.0.1.2
tunnel mode ipsec ipv4
tunnel protection ipsec profile prof2
```

Configuration snippet on Peer 1

```
interface Tunnel1
ip address 172.16.0.2 255.255.255.0
tunnel source FastEthernet0/0.110
tunnel destination 10.0.0.1
tunnel protection ipsec profile prof1
```

Configuration snippet on Peer 2

```
interface Tunnel2
ip address 192.168.1.2 255.255.255.0
tunnel source GigabitEthernet0/1
tunnel destination 172.16.0.1
tunnel mode ipsec ipv4
tunnel protection ipsec profile prof2
```

The following nested tunnel combinations are supported with tunnel protection command:

- Virtual tunnel interface (VTI) in VTI
- VTI in generic routing encapsulation (GRE) or IPsec
- GRE or IPsec in GRE or IPsec
- GRE or IPsec in VTI

How to Configure IPsec VPNs

Creating Crypto Access Lists

SUMMARY STEPS

- 1. enable
- 2. configure terminal
- **3.** Do one of the following:
 - access-list access-list-number {deny | permit} protocol source source-wildcard destination destination-wildcard [log]
 - ip access-list extended name
- 4. Repeat Step 3 for each crypto access list you want to create.

DETAILED STEPS

L

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.
	Example:	• Enter your password if prompted.
	Device> enable	
Step 2	configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
	Example: Device# configure terminal	
Step 3	<pre>Do one of the following: • access-list access-list-number {deny permit} protocol source source-wildcard destination destination-wildcard [log] • ip access-list extended name Example: Device (config) # access-list 100 permit ip 10.0.68.0 0.0.0.255 10.1.1.0 0.0.0.255 Example: Device (config) # ip access-list extended vpn-tunnel</pre>	 Specifies conditions to determine which IP packets are protected. You specify conditions using an IP access list designated by either a number or a name. The access-list command designates a numbered extended access list; the ip access-list extended command designates a named access list. Enable or disable crypto for traffic that matches these conditions. Tip Cisco recommends that you configure "mirror image" crypto access lists for use by IPsec and that you avoid using the any keyword.
Step 4	Repeat Step 3 for each crypto access list you want to create.	—

What to Do Next

After at least one crypto access list is created, a transform set needs to be defined as described in the "Configuring Transform Sets for IKEv1 and IKEv2 Proposals" section.

Next the crypto access lists need to be associated to particular interfaces when you configure and apply crypto map sets to the interfaces. (Follow the instructions in the "Creating Crypto Map Sets" and "Applying Crypto Map Sets to Interfaces" sections).

Configuring Transform Sets for IKEv1 and IKEv2 Proposals

Perform this task to define a transform set that is to be used by the IPsec peers during IPsec security association negotiations with IKEv1 and IKEv2 proposals.

Restrictions

If you are specifying SEAL encryption, note the following restrictions:

- Your router and the other peer must not have a hardware IPsec encryption.
- Your router and the other peer must support IPsec.
- Your router and the other peer must support the k9 subsystem.

- SEAL encryption is available only on Cisco equipment. Therefore, interoperability is not possible.
- Unlike IKEv1, the authentication method and SA lifetime are not negotiable in IKEv2, and because of this, these parameters cannot be configured under the IKEv2 proposal.

Configuring Transform Sets for IKEv1

SUMMARY STEPS

- 1. enable
- 2. configure terminal
- 3. crypto ipsec transform-set transform-set-name transform1 [transform2 [transform3]]
- 4. mode [tunnel | transport]
- 5. end
- **6.** clear crypto sa [peer {*ip-address* | *peer-name*} | sa map *map-name* | sa entry *destination-address protocol spi*]
- 7. show crypto ipsec transform-set [tag transform-set-name]

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.
	Example:	• Enter your password if prompted.
	Device> enable	
Step 2	configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
	Example: Device# configure terminal	
Step 3	crypto ipsec transform-set transform-set-name transform1 [transform2 [transform3]]	Defines a transform set and enters crypto transform configuration mode.
	<pre>Example: Device(config)# crypto ipsec transform-set aesset esp-aes 256 esp-sha-hmac</pre>	• There are complex rules defining the entries that you can use for transform arguments. These rules are explained in the command description for the crypto ipsec transform-set command, and the table in "About Transform Sets" section provides a list of allowed transform combinations.
Step 4	<pre>mode [tunnel transport] Example: Device(cfg-crypto-tran) # mode transport</pre>	 (Optional) Changes the mode associated with the transform set. The mode setting is applicable only to traffic whose source and destination addresses are the IPsec peer addresses; it is ignored for all other traffic. (All other traffic is in tunnel mode only.)
Step 5	end Example:	Exits crypto transform configuration mode and enters privileged EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(cfg-crypto-tran)# end	
Step 6	clear crypto sa [peer {ip-address peer-name} sa map map-name sa entry destination-address protocol spi] Example:	(Optional) Clears existing IPsec security associations so that any changes to a transform set takes effect on subsequently established security associations.
	Device# clear crypto sa	 Manually established SAs are reestablished immediately. Using the clear crypto sa command without parameters clears out the full SA database, which clears out active security sessions. You may also specify the peer, map, or entry keywords to clear out only a subset of the SA database.
Step 7	show crypto ipsec transform-set [tag transform-set-name]	(Optional) Displays the configured transform sets.
	Example:	
	Device# show crypto ipsec transform-set	

What to Do Next

After you have defined a transform set, you should create a crypto map as specified in the *Creating Crypto Map Sets* section.

Configuring Transform Sets for IKEv2

SUMMARY STEPS

- 1. enable
- 2. configure terminal
- 3. crypto ikev2 proposal proposal-name
- **4.** encryption transform1 [transform2] ...
- **5.** integrity transform1 [transform2] ...
- **6.** group transform1 [transform2] ...
- 7. end
- 8. show crypto ikev2 proposal

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.
	Example:	• Enter your password if prompted.
	Device> enable	
Step 2	configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
	Example:	
	Device# configure terminal	

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	crypto ikev2 proposal proposal-name Example:	Specifies the name of the proposal and enters crypto IKEv2 proposal configuration mode.
	Device(config)# crypto ikev2 proposal proposal-1	• The proposals are referred in IKEv2 policies through the proposal name.
Step 4	encryption transform1 [transform2] Example:	(Optional) Specifies one or more transforms of the following encryption type:
	Device(config-ikev2-proposal)# encryption	• AES-CBC 128—128-bit AES-CBC
	aes-cbc-128	• AES-CBC 192—192-bit AES-CBC
		• AES-CBC 256—256-bit AES-CBC
		• 3DES—168-bit DES (No longer recommended. AES is the recommended encryption algorithm).
Step 5	integrity transform1 [transform2]	(Optional) Specifies one or more transforms of the following integrity type:
	Example. Device(config-ikev2-proposal)# integrity sha1	• The sha256 keyword specifies SHA-2 family 256-bit (HMAC variant) as the hash algorithm.
		• The sha384 keyword specifies SHA-2 family 384-bit (HMAC variant) as the hash algorithm.
		• The sha512 keyword specifies SHA-2 family 512-bit (HMAC variant) as the hash algorithm
		• the sha1 keyword specifies the SHA-1 (HMAC variant) as the hash algorithm.
		• The md5 keyword specifies MD5 (HMAC variant) as the hash algorithm. (No longer recommended. SHA-1 is the recommended replacement.)
Step 6	group transform1 [transform2]	(Optional) Specifies one or more transforms of the possible DH group type:
	Device(config-ikev2-proposal)# group 14	• 1—768-bit DH (No longer recommended.)
		• 2—1024-bit DH (No longer recommended)
		• 5—1536-bit DH (No longer recommended)
		• 14—Specifies the 2048-bit DH group.
		• 15—Specifies the 3072-bit DH group.
		• 16—Specifies the 4096-bit DH group.
		• 19 —Specifies the 256-bit elliptic curve DH (ECDH) group.
		• 20—Specifies the 384-bit ECDH group.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		• 24—Specifies the 2048-bit DH/DSA group.
Step 7	end	Exits crypto IKEv2 proposal configuration mode and returns
	Example:	to privileged EXEC mode.
	<pre>Device(config-ikev2-proposal)# end</pre>	
Step 8	show crypto ikev2 proposal	(Optional) Displays the parameters for each IKEv2 proposal.
	Example:	
	Device# show crypto ikev2 proposal	

Transform Sets for IKEv2 Examples

The following examples show how to configure a proposal:

IKEv2 Proposal with One Transform for Each Transform Type

```
Device(config)# crypto ikev2 proposal proposal-1
Device(config-ikev2-proposal)# encryption aes-cbc-128
Device(config-ikev2-proposal)# integrity sha1
Device(config-ikev2-proposal)# group 14
```

IKEv2 Proposal with Multiple Transforms for Each Transform Type

```
crypto ikev2 proposal proposal-2
encryption aes-cbc-128 aes-cbc-192
integrity shal sha256
group 14 15
```

For a list of transform combinations, see Configuring Security for VPNs with IPsec.

IKEv2 Proposals on the Initiator and Responder

The proposal of the initiator is as follows:

```
Device(config)# crypto ikev2 proposal proposal-1
Device(config-ikev2-proposal)# encryption aes-cbc-128 aes-cbc-196
Device(config-ikev2-proposal)# integrity shal sha256
Device(config-ikev2-proposal)# group 14 16
```

The proposal of the responder is as follows:

```
Device(config)# crypto ikev2 proposal proposal-2
Device(config-ikev2-proposal)# encryption aes-cbc-196 aes-cbc-128
Device(config-ikev2-proposal)# integrity sha256 sha1
Device(config-ikev2-proposal)# group 16 14
```

In the scenario, the initiator's choice of algorithms is preferred and the selected algorithms are as follows:

```
encryption aes-cbc-128
integrity shal
group 14
```

What to Do Next

After you have defined a transform set, you should create a crypto map as specified in the *Creating Crypto Map Sets* section.

Creating Crypto Map Sets

Creating Static Crypto Maps

When IKE is used to establish SAs, the IPsec peers can negotiate the settings they use for the new security associations. This means that you can specify lists (such as lists of acceptable transforms) within the crypto map entry.

Perform this task to create crypto map entries that use IKE to establish SAs. To create IPv6 crypto map entries, you must use the **ipv6** keyword with the **crypto map** command. For IPv4 crypto maps, use the **crypto map** command without the **ipv6** keyword.



Note

Security threats, as well as the cryptographic technologies to help protect against them, are constantly changing. For more information about the latest Cisco cryptographic recommendations, see the Next Generation Encryption (NGE) white paper.

SUMMARY STEPS

- 1. enable
- **2**. configure terminal
- **3**. **crypto map** [**ipv6**] *map-name seq-num* [**ipsec-isakmp**]
- 4. match address access-list-id
- **5. set peer** {*hostname* | *ip-address*}
- 6. crypto ipsec security-association dummy {pps rate | seconds seconds}
- 7. set transform-set transform-set-name1 [transform-set-name2...transform-set-name6]
- 8. set security-association lifetime {seconds seconds | kilobytes kilobytes | kilobytes disable}
- 9. set security-association level per-host
- 10. set pfs [group1 | group14 | group15 | group16 | group19 | group2 | group20 | group24 | group5]
- 11. end
- **12.** show crypto map [interface interface | tag map-name]

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.
	Example:	• Enter your password if prompted.
	Device> enable	
Step 2	configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
	Example:	
	Device# configure terminal	

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	crypto map [ipv6] <i>map-name seq-num</i> [ipsec-isakmp] Example:	Creates or modifies a crypto map entry, and enters crypto map configuration mode.
	Device(config)# crypto map static-map 1 ipsec-isakmp	• For IPv4 crypto maps, use the command without the ipv6 keyword.
Step 4	match address access-list-id	Names an extended access list.
	<pre>Example: Device(config-crypto-m)# match address vpn-tunnel</pre>	• This access list determines the traffic that should be protected by IPsec and the traffic that should not be protected by IPsec security in the context of this crypto map entry.
Step 5	<pre>set peer {hostname ip-address} Example:</pre>	Specifies a remote IPsec peer—the peer to which IPsec protected traffic can be forwarded.
	Device(config-crypto-m)# set-peer 192.168.101.1	• Repeat for multiple remote peers.
Step 6	crypto ipsec security-association dummy {pps rate seconds seconds}	Enables generating dummy packets. These dummy packets are generated for all flows created in the crypto map.
	Example: Device(config-crypto-m)# set security-association dummy seconds 5	1
Step 7	set transform-set transform-set-name1 [transform-set-name2transform-set-name6]	Specifies the transform sets that are allowed for this crypto map entry.
	<pre>Example: Device(config-crypto-m)# set transform-set aesset</pre>	• List multiple transform sets in the order of priority (highest priority first).
Step 8	set security-association lifetime {seconds seconds kilobytes kilobytes kilobytes disable}	(Optional) Specifies a SA lifetime for the crypto map entry.
	<pre>Example: Device (config-crypto-m)# set security-association lifetime seconds 2700</pre>	• By default, the SAs of the crypto map are negotiated according to the global lifetimes, which can be disabled.
Step 9	set security-association level per-host	(Optional) Specifies that separate SAs should be
	<pre>Example: Device(config-crypto-m)# set security-association level per-host</pre>	 By default, a single IPsec "tunnel" can carry traffic for multiple source hosts and multiple destination hosts.
		Caution Use this command with care because multiple streams between given subnets can rapidly consume resources.
Step 10	set pfs [group1 group14 group15 group16 group19 group2 group20 group24 group5]	(Optional) Specifies that IPsec either should ask for password forward secrecy (PFS) when requesting new SAs

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: Device(config-crypto-m)# set pfs group14	for this crypto map entry or should demand PFS in requests received from the IPsec peer.
		• Group 1 specifies the 768-bit Diffie-Hellman (DH) identifier (default). (No longer recommended).
		• Group 2 specifies the 1024-bit DH identifier. (No longer recommended).
		• Group 5 specifies the 1536-bit DH identifier. (No longer recommended)
		• Group 14 specifies the 2048-bit DH identifier.
		• Group 15 specifies the 3072-bit DH identifier.
		• Group 16 specifies the 4096-bit DH identifier.
		• Group 19 specifies the 256-bit elliptic curve DH (ECDH) identifier.
		• Group 20 specifies the 384-bit ECDH identifier.
		• Group 24 specifies the 2048-bit DH/DSA identifier
		• By default, PFS is not requested. If no group is specified with this command, group 1 is used as the default.
Step 11	end	Exits crypto map configuration mode and returns to
	Example:	privileged EXEC mode.
	<pre>Device(config-crypto-m) # end</pre>	
Step 12	show crypto map [interface interface tag map-name]	Displays your crypto map configuration.
	Example:	
	Device# show crypto map	

Troubleshooting Tips

Certain configuration changes take effect only when negotiating subsequent SAs. If you want the new settings to take immediate effect, you must clear the existing SAs so that they are reestablished with the changed configuration. If the router is actively processing IPsec traffic, clear only the portion of the SA database that would be affected by the configuration changes (that is, clear only the SAs established by a given crypto map set). Clearing the full SA database should be reserved for large-scale changes, or when the router is processing very little other IPsec traffic.

To clear IPsec SAs, use the **clear crypto sa** command with appropriate parameters. (Omitting all parameters clears out the full SA database, which clears active security sessions.)

What to Do Next

After you have successfully created a static crypto map, you must apply the crypto map set to each interface through which IPsec traffic flows. To complete this task, see the "Applying Crypto Map Sets to Interfaces" section.

Creating Dynamic Crypto Maps

Dynamic crypto map entries specify crypto access lists that limit traffic for which IPsec SAs can be established. A dynamic crypto map entry that does not specify an access list is ignored during traffic filtering. A dynamic crypto map entry with an empty access list causes traffic to be dropped. If there is only one dynamic crypto map entry in the crypto map set, it must specify the acceptable transform sets.

Perform this task to create dynamic crypto map entries that use IKE to establish the SAs.



Note

IPv6 addresses are not supported on dynamic crypto maps.

Note

Security threats, as well as the cryptographic technologies to help protect against them, are constantly changing.
 For more information about the latest Cisco cryptographic recommendations, see the Next Generation
 Encryption (NGE) white paper.

SUMMARY STEPS

- 1. enable
- 2. configure terminal
- 3. crypto dynamic-map dynamic-map-name dynamic-seq-num
- 4. set transform-set transform-set-name1 [transform-set-name2...transform-set-name6]
- 5. match address access-list-id
- **6. set peer** {*hostname* | *ip-address*}
- 7. set security-association lifetime {seconds *seconds* | kilobytes *kilobytes* | kilobytes disable}
- 8. set pfs [group1 | group14 | group15 | group16 | group19 | group2 | group20 | group24 | group5]
- 9. exit
- 10. exit
- **11.** show crypto dynamic-map [tag map-name]
- 12. configure terminal
- 13. crypto map map-name seq-num ipsec-isakmp dynamic dynamic-map-name [discover]
- **14**. exit

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.
	Example:	• Enter your password if prompted.
	Device> enable	

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
	Example:	
	Device# configure terminal	
Step 3	crypto dynamic-map dynamic-map-name	Creates a dynamic crypto map entry and enters crypto map
	Example:	configuration mode.
	EXAMPLE. Device(config)# crypto dynamic-map test-map 1	
Sten 4	set transform_set transform_set_name1	Specifies the transform sets allowed for the crypto man
otop 4	[transform-set-name2transform-set-name6]	entry.
	Example:	• List multiple transform sets in the order of priority
	<pre>Device(config-crypto-m)# set transform-set aesset</pre>	(highest priority first). This is the only configuration statement required in dynamic crypto map entries.
Step 5	match address access-list-id	(Optional) Specifies the list number or name of an extended access list
	Example:	• This access list determines which traffic should be
	Device(config-crypto-m) # match address 101	protected by IPsec and which traffic should not be
		protected by IPsec security in the context of this
		Note Although access lists are optional for dynamic crypto maps, they are highly recommended.
		• If an access list is configured, the data flow identity proposed by the IPsec peer must fall within a permit statement for this crypto access list.
		• If an access list is not configured, the device accepts any data flow identity proposed by the IPsec peer. However, if an access list is configured but the specified access list does not exist or is empty, the device drops all packets. This is similar to static crypto maps, which require access lists to be specified.
		• Care must be taken if the any keyword is used in the access list, because the access list is used for packet filtering as well as for negotiation.
		• You must configure a match address; otherwise, the behavior is not secure, and you cannot enable TED because packets are sent in the clear (unencrypted.)
Step 6	<pre>set peer {hostname ip-address}</pre>	(Optional) Specifies a remote IPsec peer. Repeat this step
	Example:	for multiple remote peers.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-crypto-m)# set peer 192.168.101.1	Note This is rarely configured in dynamic crypto map entries. Dynamic crypto map entries are often used for unknown remote peers.
Step 7	<pre>set security-association lifetime {seconds seconds kilobytes kilobytes kilobytes disable} Example: Device(config-crypto-m)# set security-association lifetime seconds 7200</pre>	(Optional) Overrides (for a particular crypto map entry) the global lifetime value, which is used when negotiating IP Security SAs.nNoteTo minimize the possibility of packet loss when rekeying in high bandwidth environments, you can disable the rekey request triggered by a volume lifetime expiry.
Step 8	<pre>set pfs [group1 group14 group15 group16 group19 group2 group20 group24 group5] Example: Device(config-crypto-m)# set pfs group14</pre>	 (Optional) Specifies that IPsec should ask for PFS when requesting new security associations for this crypto map entry or should demand PFS in requests received from the IPsec peer. Group 1 specifies the 768-bit Diffie-Hellman (DH) identifier (default). (No longer recommended). Group 2 specifies the 1024-bit DH identifier. (No longer recommended). Group 5 specifies the 1536-bit DH identifier. (No longer recommended) Group 14 specifies the 2048-bit DH identifier. Group 15 specifies the 3072-bit DH identifier. Group 16 specifies the 4096-bit DH identifier. Group 19 specifies the 256-bit elliptic curve DH (ECDH) identifier. Group 20 specifies the 384-bit ECDH identifier. Group 24 specifies the 2048-bit DH/DSA identifier By default, PFS is not requested. If no group is specified with this command, group1 is used as the default.
Step 9	<pre>exit Example: Device(config-crypto-m)# exit</pre>	Exits crypto map configuration mode and returns to global configuration mode.
Step 10	exit Example: Device(config)# exit	Exits global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 11	<pre>show crypto dynamic-map [tag map-name] Example: Device# show crypto dynamic-map</pre>	(Optional) Displays information about dynamic crypto maps.
Step 12	<pre>configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 13	<pre>crypto map map-name seq-num ipsec-isakmp dynamic dynamic-map-name [discover] Example: Device(config)# crypto map static-map 1 ipsec-isakmp dynamic test-map discover</pre>	 (Optional) Adds a dynamic crypto map to a crypto map set. You should set the crypto map entries referencing dynamic maps to the lowest priority entries in a crypto map set. Note You must enter the discover keyword to enable TED.
Step 14	exit Example: Device(config)# exit	Exits global configuration mode.

Troubleshooting Tips

Certain configuration changes take effect only when negotiating subsequent SAs. If you want the new settings to take immediate effect, you must clear the existing SAs so that they are reestablished with the changed configuration. If the router is actively processing IPsec traffic, clear only the portion of the SA database that would be affected by the configuration changes (that is, clear only the SAs established by a given crypto map set). Clearing the entire SA database must be reserved for large-scale changes, or when the router is processing minimal IPsec traffic.

To clear IPsec SAs, use the **clear crypto sa** command with appropriate parameters. (Omitting all parameters clears the full SA database, which clears active security sessions.)

What to Do Next

After you have successfully created a crypto map set, you must apply the crypto map set to each interface through which IPsec traffic flows. To complete this task, see the "Applying Crypto Map Sets to Interfaces" section.

Creating Crypto Map Entries to Establish Manual SAs

Perform this task to create crypto map entries to establish manual SAs (that is, when IKE is not used to establish the SAs). To create IPv6 crypto maps entries, you must use the **ipv6** keyword with the **crypto map** command. For IPv4 crypto maps, use the **crypto map** command without the **ipv6** keyword.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable

- **2**. configure terminal
- 3. crypto map [ipv6] map-name seq-num [ipsec-manual]
- 4. match address access-list-id
- **5. set peer** {*hostname* | *ip-address*}
- 6. set transform-set transform-set-name
- **7.** Do one of the following:
 - set session-key inbound ah spi hex-key-string
 - set session-key outbound ah spi hex-key-string
- **8.** Do one of the following:
 - set session-key inbound esp spi cipher hex-key-string [authenticator hex-key-string]
 - set session-key outbound esp spi cipher hex-key-string [authenticator hex-key-string]
- 9. exit
- 10. exit
- **11.** show crypto map [interface interface | tag map-name]

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.
	Example: Device> enable	• Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
	Example: Device# configure terminal	
Step 3	<pre>crypto map [ipv6] map-name seq-num [ipsec-manual] Example: Device(config)# crypto map mymap 10 ipsec-manual</pre>	 Specifies the crypto map entry to be created or modified and enters crypto map configuration mode. For IPv4 crypto maps, use the crypto map command without the ipv6 keyword.
Step 4	<pre>match address access-list-id Example: Device(config-crypto-m)# match address 102</pre>	 Names an IPsec access list that determines which traffic should be protected by IPsec and which traffic should not be protected by IPsec in the context of this crypto map entry. The access list can specify only one permit entry when IKE is not used.
Step 5	<pre>set peer {hostname ip-address} Example: Device(config-crypto-m) # set peer 10.0.0.5</pre>	Specifies the remote IPsec peer. This is the peer to which IPsec protected traffic should be forwarded. • Only one peer can be specified when IKE is not used.
Step 6	set transform-set transform-set-name	Specifies which transform set should be used.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: Device(config-crypto-m)# set transform-set someset	• This must be the same transform set that is specified in the remote peer's corresponding crypto map entry.
		Note Only one transform set can be specified when IKE is not used.
Step 7	Do one of the following: • set session-key inbound ah spi hex-key-string • set session-key outbound ah spi hex-key-string Example: Device (config-crypto-m) # set session-key inbound ah 256 98765432109876549876543210987654 Example:	 Sets the AH security parameter indexes (SPIs) and keys to apply to inbound and outbound protected traffic if the specified transform set includes the AH protocol. This manually specifies the AH security association to be used with protected traffic.
	<pre>Example: Device(config-crypto-m)# set session-key outbound ah 256 fedcbafedcbafedcfedcbafedcbafedc</pre>	X
Step 8	 Do one of the following: set session-key inbound esp spi cipher hex-key-string [authenticator hex-key-string] set session-key outbound esp spi cipher hex-key-string [authenticator hex-key-string] 	Sets the Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) Security Parameter Indexes (SPI) and keys to apply to inbound and outbound protected traffic if the specified transform set includes the ESP protocol. Or
	Example: Device(config-crypto-m)# set session-key inbound esp 256 cipher 0123456789012345	Specifies the cipher keys if the transform set includes an ESP cipher algorithm. Specifies the authenticator keys if the transform set includes an ESP authenticator algorithm.
	Example: Device(config-crypto-m)# set session-key outbound esp 256 cipher abcdefabcdefabcd	• This manually specifies the ESP security association to be used with protected traffic.
Step 9	<pre>exit Example: Device(config-crypto-m)# exit</pre>	Exits crypto map configuration mode and returns to global configuration mode.
Step 10	exit Example: Device(config)# exit	Exits global configuration mode.
Step 11	<pre>show crypto map [interface interface tag map-name] Example: Device# show crypto map</pre>	Displays your crypto map configuration.

Troubleshooting Tips

For manually established SAs, you must clear and reinitialize the SAs for the changes to take effect. To clear IPsec SAs, use the **clear crypto sa** command with appropriate parameters. (Omitting all parameters clears the entire SA database, which clears active security sessions.)

What to Do Next

After you have successfully created a crypto map set, you must apply the crypto map set to each interface through which IPsec traffic flows. To complete this task, see the "Applying Crypto Map Sets to Interfaces" section.

Applying Crypto Map Sets to Interfaces

You must apply a crypto map set to each interface through which IPsec traffic flows. Applying the crypto map set to an interface instructs the device to evaluate the interface's traffic against the crypto map set and to use the specified policy during connection or security association negotiation on behalf of traffic to be protected by the crypto map.

Perform this task to apply a crypto map to an interface.

SUMMARY STEPS

- 1. enable
- **2**. configure terminal
- **3.** interface *type/number*
- 4. crypto map map-name
- 5. exit
- 6. crypto map map-name local-address interface-id
- 7. exit
- **8.** show crypto map [interface interface]

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.
	Example:	• Enter your password if prompted.
	Device> enable	
Step 2	configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
	Example:	
	Device# configure terminal	
Step 3	interface type/number	Configures an interface and enters interface configuration mode.
	Example:	
	<pre>Device(config)# interface FastEthernet 0/0</pre>	
Step 4	crypto map map-name	Applies a crypto map set to an interface.
	Example:	
	Device(config-if)# crypto map mymap	
Step 5	exit	Exits interface configuration mode and returns to global configuration mode.
	Example:	
	<pre>Device(config-if)# exit</pre>	

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 6	crypto map map-name local-address interface-id	(Optional) Permits redundant interfaces to share the same crypto map using the same local identity.
	Example:	
	<pre>Device(config)# crypto map mymap local-address loopback0</pre>	
Step 7	exit	(Optional) Exits global configuration mode.
	Example:	
	Device(config)# exit	
Step 8	show crypto map [interface interface]	(Optional) Displays your crypto map configuration
	Example:	
	Device# show crypto map	

Configuration Examples for IPsec VPN

Example: Configuring AES-Based Static Crypto Map

This example shows how a static crypto map is configured and how an AES is defined as the encryption method:

```
crypto isakmp policy 10
encryption aes 256
authentication pre-share
group 14
lifetime 180
crypto isakmp key cisco123 address 10.0.110.1
1
crypto ipsec transform-set aesset esp-aes 256 esp-sha-hmac
mode transport
!
crypto map aesmap 10 ipsec-isakmp
set peer 10.0.110.1
set transform-set aesset
match address 120
1
1
1
voice call carrier capacity active
1
mta receive maximum-recipients 0
1
interface FastEthernet0/0
ip address 10.0.110.2 255.255.255.0
ip nat outside
no ip route-cache
no ip mroute-cache
duplex auto
 speed auto
```
```
crypto map aesmap
1
interface Serial0/0
no ip address
shutdown
interface FastEthernet0/1
ip address 10.0.110.1 255.255.255.0
 ip nat inside
no ip route-cache
 no ip mroute-cache
 duplex auto
speed auto
!
ip nat inside source list 110 interface FastEthernet0/0 overload
ip classless
ip route 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 10.5.1.1
ip route 10.0.110.0 255.255.255.0 FastEthernet0/0
ip route 172.18.124.0 255.255.255.0 10.5.1.1
ip route 172.18.125.3 255.255.255.255 10.5.1.1
ip http server
1
1
access-list 110 deny ip 10.0.110.0 0.0.0.255 10.0.110.0 0.0.0.255
access-list 110 permit ip 10.0.110.0 0.0.0.255 any
access-list 120 permit ip 10.0.110.0 0.0.0.255 10.0.110.0 0.0.0.255
1
```

Additional References for Configuring Security for VPNs with IPsec

Related Topic	Document Title
Cisco IOS commands	Cisco IOS Master Commands List, All Releases
IKE, IPsec, and PKI configuration commands	 Cisco IOS Security Command Reference Commands A to C Cisco IOS Security Command Reference Commands D to L Cisco IOS Security Command Reference Commands M to R Cisco IOS Security Command Reference Commands S to Z
IKE configuration	Configuring Internet Key Exchange for IPsec VPNs
Suite-B SHA-2 family (HMAC variant) and Elliptic Curve (EC) key pair configuration	Configuring Internet Key Exchange for IPsec VPNs

Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
Suite-B Integrity algorithm type transform configuration	Configuring Internet Key Exchange Version 2 (IKEv2)
Suite-B Elliptic Curve Digital Signature Algorithm (ECDSA) signature (ECDSA-sig) authentication method configuration for IKEv2	Configuring Internet Key Exchange Version 2 (IKEv2)
Suite-B Elliptic curve Diffie-Hellman (ECDH) support for IPsec SA negotiation	 Configuring Internet Key Exchange for IPsec VPNs Configuring Internet Key Exchange Version 2 (IKEv2) and FlexVPN Site-to-Site
Suite-B support for certificate enrollment for a PKI	Configuring Certificate Enrollment for a PKI
Set Up VPN between Cisco ASR 100 Series and Google Cloud Platform	Set Up VPN between Cisco ASR 100 Series and Google Cloud Platform
Recommended cryptographic algorithms	Next Generation Encryption

Standards

Standards	Title	
None	_	

MIBs

MIBs	MIBs Link
 CISCO-IPSEC-FLOW-MONITOR- MIB CISCO-IPSEC-MIB CISCO-IPSEC-POLICY-MAP-MIB 	To locate and download MIBs for selected platforms, Cisco IOS software releases, and feature sets, use Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL: http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs

RFCs

RFCs	Title
RFC 2401	Security Architecture for the Internet Protocol
RFC 2402	IP Authentication Header
RFC 2403	The Use of HMAC-MD5-96 within ESP and AH
RFC 2404	The Use of HMAC-SHA-1-96 within ESP and AH
RFC 2405	The ESP DES-CBC Cipher Algorithm With Explicit IV

RFCs	Title
RFC 2406	IP Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP)
RFC 2407	The Internet IP Security Domain of Interpretation for ISAKMP
RFC 2408	Internet Security Association and Key Management Protocol (ISAKMP)

Technical Assistance

Description	Link
The Cisco Support and Documentation website provides online resources to download documentation, software, and tools. Use these resources to install and configure the software and to troubleshoot and resolve technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support and Documentation website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.	http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html

Feature Information for Configuring Security for VPNs with IPsec

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Feature Name	Software Releases	Feature Information
Advanced Encryption Standard	12.2(8)T	This feature adds support for the new encryption standard AES, which is a privacy transform for IPsec and IKE and has been developed to replace DES.
		The following commands were modified by this feature: crypto ipsec transform-set, encryption (IKE policy), show crypto ipsec transform-set, show crypto isakmp policy.
DES/3DES/AES VPN Encryption Module (AIM-VPN/EPII, AIM-VPN/HPII, AIM-VPN/BPII Family)	12.3(7)T	This feature describes in which VPN encryption hardware AIM and NM are supported, in certain Cisco IOS software releases.

Table 2: Feature Information for Configuring Security for IPsec VPNs

Feature Name	Software Releases	Feature Information
IKEv2 Proposal Support	15.1(1)T	An IKEv2 proposal is a set of transforms used in the negotiation of IKEv2 SA as part of the IKE_SA_INIT exchange. An IKEv2 proposal is regarded as complete only when it has at least an encryption algorithm, an integrity algorithm, and a Diffie-Hellman (DH) group configured. If no proposal is configured and attached to an IKEv2 policy, then the default proposal is used in negotiation.
		The following commands were modified by this feature: crypto ikev2 proposal, encryption (ikev2 proposal), group (ikev2 proposal), integrity (ikev2 proposal), show crypto ikev2 proposal.
IPv6 Support for IPsec and IKEy2	15.1(4)M	This feature allows IPv6 addresses to be added to IPsec and IKEv2 protocols
	15.1(1)SY	The following commands were introduced or modified: crypto map (global IPsec), crypto map (isakmp), crypto map (Xauth), ipv6 crypto map.
Option to Disable Volume-based IPsec	15.0(1)M	This feature allows customers to disable the IPsec security association rekey when processing large amounts of data.
Lifetime Rekey		The following commands were modified by this feature: crypto ipsec security association lifetime, set security-association lifetime.
SEAL Encryption	12.3(7)T	This feature adds support for SEAL encryption in IPsec.
		The following command was modified by this feature: crypto ipsec transform-set .
Software IPPCP (LZS) with Hardware Encryption	12.2(13)T	This feature allows customers to use LZS software compression with IPsec when a VPN module is in Cisco 2600 and Cisco 3600 series routers.
Suite-B Support in IOS SW Crypto	15.1(2)T	Suite-B adds support for four user interface suites of cryptographic algorithms for use with IKE and IPSec that are described in RFC 4869. Each suite consists of an encryption algorithm, a digital signature algorithm, a key agreement algorithm, and a hash or message digest algorithm.
		The following command was modified by this feature: crypto ipsec transform-set .

Glossary

anti-replay—Security service where the receiver can reject old or duplicate packets to protect itself against replay attacks. IPsec provides this optional service by use of a sequence number combined with the use of

data authentication. Cisco IOS XE IPsec provides this service whenever it provides the data authentication service, except for manually established SAs (that is, SAs established by configuration and not by IKE).

data authentication—Verification of the integrity and origin of the data. Data authentication can refer either to integrity alone or to both of these concepts (although data origin authentication is dependent upon data integrity).

data confidentiality—Security service in which the protected data cannot be observed.

data flow—Grouping of traffic, identified by a combination of source address or mask, destination address or mask, IP next protocol field, and source and destination ports, where the protocol and port fields can have the values of **any**. IPsec protection is applied to data flows.

IKE—Internet Key Exchange. IKE establishes a shared security policy and authenticates keys for services (such as IPSec) that require keys. Before any IPSec traffic can be passed, each router/firewall/host must verify the identity of its peer. This can be done by manually entering preshared keys into both hosts or by a CA service.

IPsec—IP Security. A framework of open standards that provides data confidentiality, data integrity, and data authentication between participating peers. IPSec provides these security services at the IP layer. IPSec uses IKE to handle the negotiation of protocols and algorithms based on local policy and to generate the encryption and authentication keys to be used by IPSec. IPSec can protect one or more data flows between a pair of hosts, between a pair of security gateways, or between a security gateway and a host.

peer—In the context of this module, a "peer" is a router or other device that participates in IPsec.

PFS—perfect forward secrecy. Cryptographic characteristic associated with a derived shared secret value. With PFS, if one key is compromised, previous and subsequent keys are not compromised, because subsequent keys are not derived from previous keys.

SA—security association. Description of how two or more entities use security services in the context of a particular security protocol (AH or ESP) to communicate securely on behalf of a particular data flow. The transform and the shared secret keys are used for protecting the traffic.

SPI—security parameter index. A number which, together with a destination IP address and security protocol, uniquely identifies a particular security association. Without IKE, the SPI is manually specified for each security association.

transform—List of operations performed on a dataflow to provide data authentication, data confidentiality, and data compression. For example, one transform is the ESP protocol with the HMAC-MD5 authentication algorithm; another transform is the AH protocol with the 56-bit DES encryption algorithm and the ESP protocol with the HMAC-SHA authentication algorithm.

tunnel—In the context of this module, "tunnel" is a secure communication path between two peers, such as two routers. It does not refer to using IPsec in tunnel mode.

Glossary

I



IPsec Virtual Tunnel Interfaces

IPsec virtual tunnel interfaces (VTIs) provide a routable interface type for terminating IPsec tunnels and an easy way to define protection between sites to form an overlay network. IPsec VTIs simplify the configuration of IPsec for protection of remote links, support multicast, and simplify network management and load balancing.

Note

Security threats, as well as the cryptographic technologies to help protect against them, are constantly changing. For more information about the latest Cisco cryptographic recommendations, see the Next Generation Encryption (NGE) white paper.

- Finding Feature Information, on page 33
- Restrictions for IPsec Virtual Tunnel Interfaces, on page 33
- Information About IPsec Virtual Tunnel Interfaces, on page 34
- How to Configure IPsec Virtual Tunnel Interfaces, on page 40
- Configuration Examples for IPsec Virtual Tunnel Interfaces, on page 66
- Additional References for IPsec Virtual Tunnel Interface, on page 83
- Feature Information for IPsec Virtual Tunnel Interfaces, on page 84

Finding Feature Information

Your software release may not support all the features documented in this module. For the latest caveats and feature information, see **Bug Search Tool** and the release notes for your platform and software release. To find information about the features documented in this module, and to see a list of the releases in which each feature is supported, see the feature information table.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Restrictions for IPsec Virtual Tunnel Interfaces

Fragmentation

Fragmentation is not supported over IPsec tunnel. You can choose to set the lower MTU on hosts to avoid packet fragments or choose to fragment the packets on any device before it reaches ASR 920.

IPsec Transform Set

The IPsec transform set must be configured in tunnel mode only.

IKE Security Association

The Internet Key Exchange (IKE) security association (SA) is bound to the VTI.

IPsec SA Traffic Selectors

Static VTIs (SVTIs) support only a single IPsec SA that is attached to the VTI interface. The traffic selector for the IPsec SA is always "IP any any."

IPv4

This feature supports SVTIs that are configured to encapsulate IPv4 packets for 15.5(3)M and earlier releases.

Quality of Service (QoS) Traffic Shaping

The shaped traffic is process switched.

Tunnel Protection

Do not configure the shared keyword when using the tunnel mode ipsec ipv4 command for IPsec IPv4 mode.

Traceroute

The traceroute function with crypto offload on VTIs is not supported.

Information About IPsec Virtual Tunnel Interfaces

The use of IPsec VTIs can simplify the configuration process when you need to provide protection for remote access and it provides an alternative to using generic routing encapsulation (GRE) or Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol (L2TP) tunnels for encapsulation. A benefit of using IPsec VTIs is that the configuration does not require static mapping of IPsec sessions to a physical interface. The IPsec tunnel endpoint is associated with an actual (virtual) interface. Because there is a routable interface at the tunnel endpoint, many common interface capabilities can be applied to the IPsec tunnel.

The IPsec VTI allows for the flexibility of sending and receiving both IP unicast and multicast encrypted traffic on any physical interface, such as in the case of multiple paths. Traffic is encrypted or decrypted when it is forwarded from or to the tunnel interface and is managed by the IP routing table. Using IP routing to forward the traffic to the tunnel interface simplifies the IPsec VPN configuration. Because DVTIs function like any other real interface you can apply quality of service (QoS), firewall, and other security services as soon as the tunnel is active.

Without VPN Acceleration Module2+ (VAM2+) accelerating virtual interfaces, the packet traversing an IPsec virtual interface is directed to the Router Processor (RP) for encapsulation. This method tends to be slow and has limited scalability. In hardware crypto mode, all the IPsec VTIs are accelerated by the VAM2+ crypto engine, and all traffic going through the tunnel is encrypted and decrypted by the VAM2+.

The following sections provide details about the IPSec VTI:

Benefits of Using IPsec Virtual Tunnel Interfaces

IPsec VTIs allow you to configure a virtual interface to which you can apply features. Features for clear-text packets are configured on the VTI. Features for encrypted packets are applied on the physical outside interface. When IPsec VTIs are used, you can separate the application of features such as Network Address Translation (NAT), ACLs, and QoS and apply them to clear-text, or encrypted text, or both.

There are two types of VTI interfaces: static VTIs (SVTIs) and dynamic VTIs (DVTIs).

Static Virtual Tunnel Interfaces

SVTI configurations can be used for site-to-site connectivity in which a tunnel provides always-on access between two sites.

Additionally, multiple Cisco IOS software features can be configured directly on the tunnel interface and on the physical egress interface of the tunnel interface. This direct configuration allows users to have solid control on the application of the features in the pre- or post-encryption path.

The figure below illustrates how a SVTI is used.

Figure 2: IPsec SVTI



The IPsec VTI supports native IPsec tunneling and exhibits most of the properties of a physical interface.

Dynamic Virtual Tunnel Interfaces

DVTIs can provide highly secure and scalable connectivity for remote-access VPNs. The DVTI technology replaces dynamic crypto maps and the dynamic hub-and-spoke method for establishing tunnels.

Note

You can configure DVTIs with IKEv1 or IKEv2. The legacy crypto map based configuration supports DVTIs with IKEv1 only. A DVTI configuration with IKEv2 is supported only in FlexVPN.

DVTIs can be used for both the server and the remote configuration. The tunnels provide an on-demand separate virtual access interface for each VPN session. The configuration of the virtual access interfaces is cloned from a virtual template configuration, which includes the IPsec configuration and any Cisco IOS software feature configured on the virtual template interface, such as QoS, NetFlow, or ACLs.

DVTIs function like any other real interface, so you can apply QoS, firewall, or other security services as soon as the tunnel is active. QoS features can be used to improve the performance of various applications across the network. Any combination of QoS features offered in Cisco IOS software can be used to support voice, video, or data applications.

DVTIs provide efficiency in the use of IP addresses and provide secure connectivity. DVTIs allow dynamically downloadable per-group and per-user policies to be configured on a RADIUS server. The per-group or per-user definition can be created using an extended authentication (Xauth) User or Unity group, or can be derived from a certificate. DVTIs are standards based, so interoperability in a multiple-vendor environment is supported. IPsec DVTIs allow you to create highly secure connectivity for remote access VPNs and can be combined with Cisco Architecture for Voice, Video, and Integrated Data (AVVID) to deliver converged voice, video, and data over IP networks. The DVTI simplifies VPN routing and forwarding- (VRF-) aware IPsec deployment. The VRF is configured on the interface.

A DVTI requires minimal configuration on the router. A single virtual template can be configured and cloned.

The DVTI creates an interface for IPsec sessions and uses the virtual template infrastructure for dynamic instantiation and management of dynamic IPsec VTIs. The virtual template infrastructure is extended to create dynamic virtual-access tunnel interfaces. DVTIs are used in hub-and-spoke configurations. A single DVTI can support several static VTIs.

The figure below illustrates the DVTI authentication path.

Figure 3: Dynamic IPsec VTI



The authentication shown in the figure above follows this path:

- **1.** User 1 calls the router.
- 2. Router 1 authenticates User 1.
- 3. IPsec clones the virtual access interface from the virtual template interface.

Traffic Encryption with the IPsec Virtual Tunnel Interface

When an IPsec VTI is configured, encryption occurs in the tunnel. Traffic is encrypted when it is forwarded to the tunnel interface. Traffic forwarding is handled by the IP routing table, and dynamic or static routing can be used to route traffic to the SVTI. DVTI uses reverse route injection to further simplify the routing configurations. Using IP routing to forward the traffic to encryption simplifies the IPsec VPN configuration . The IPsec virtual tunnel also allows you to encrypt multicast traffic with IPsec.

IPsec packet flow into the IPSec tunnel is illustrated in the figure below.

Figure 4: Packet Flow into the IPsec Tunnel



After packets arrive on the inside interface, the forwarding engine switches the packets to the VTI, where they are encrypted. The encrypted packets are handed back to the forwarding engine, where they are switched through the outside interface.

The figure below shows the packet flow out of the IPsec tunnel.

Figure 5: Packet Flow out of the IPsec Tunnel



Multi-SA Support for Dynamic Virtual Tunnel Interfaces for IKEv1

DVTI supports multiple IPsec SAs. The DVTI can accept multiple IPsec selectors that are proposed by the initiator.

The DVTIs allow per peer features to be applied on a dedicated interface. You can order features in such way that all features that are applied on the virtual access interfaces are applied before applying crypto. Additionally, all the features that are applied on the physical interfaces are applied after applying crypto. Clean routing is available across all VRFs so that there are no traffic leaks from one VRF to another before encrypting.

Multi-SA VTIs ensure interoperation with third-party devices and provide a flexible, clean, and modular feature set.

Multi-SA VTIs enable a clean Cisco IOS infrastructure, even when the Cisco IOS software interoperates with third-party devices that implement only crypto maps.

VRF and Scalability of the Baseline Configuration for IKEv1

Virtual access instances inherit the Inside-VRF (IVRF) from the template configuration. Users must configure several templates to enforce an appropriate IVRF for each customer. The number of templates must be equal to the number of customers connecting to the headend. Such a configuration is cumbersome and undesirable.

This complication can be avoided by allowing the IKE profile to override the virtual access VRF with the VRF configured on the IKE profile. An even better solution will be to allow the IKE profile to override the virtual access VRF using AAA, but this method is supported only for IKEv2.

This complication can be avoided by allowing the IKE profile to override the virtual access VRF with the VRF configured on the IKE profile. A better solution is to allow the IKE profile to override the virtual access VRF using AAA, but this method is supported only for IKEv2.

The VRF configured in the ISAKMP profile is applied to the virtual access first. Then the configuration from virtual template is applied to the virtual access. If your virtual template contains **ip vrf forwarding** command configuration, the VRF from the template overrides the VRF from the ISAKMP profile.

Rules for Initial Configuration of a VRF

The following rules must be applied during the initial configuration of VRF:

- If you configure IVRF in the IKE profile without configuring it in the virtual template, then you must apply the VRF from the IKE profile on each virtual access derived from this IKE profile.
- If you configure VRF in an IKE profile and virtual template, then the virtual template IVRF gets precedence.

Rules for Changing the VRF

If you change the VRF configured in an IKE profile, all the IKE SAs, IPsec SAs, and the virtual access identifier derived from this profile will get deleted. The same rule applies when the VRF is configured on the IKE profile for the first time.

Multi-SA Support for Dynamic Virtual Tunnel Interfaces for IKEv2

The configuration of an IKEv2 profile in an IPsec profile on an IKEv2 responder is not mandatory. The IPsec DVTI sessions using the same virtual template can use different IKEv2 profiles, thus avoiding the need for a separate virtual template for each DVTI session that needs a different IKEv2 profile. Such an arrangement helps reduce the configuration size and save virtual template Interface Descriptor Block (IDB).

The IKEv2 authorization policy, which is a container of IKEv2 local AAA group authorization parameters, contains an AAA attribute AAA_AT_IPSEC_FLOW_LIMIT and the **ipsec flow- limit** command. This attribute limits the number of IPsec flows that can terminate on an IPsec DVTI virtual access interface.

The value specified by the **ipsec flow- limit** command from the AAA overrides the value set by the **set security-policy limit** command from the IPsec profile. Any change to the value set by the **set security-policy limit** command in the IPSec profile is not applied to the current session but is applied to subsequent sessions.

If the value set by the **set security-policy limit** command is overridden by AAA, then the value from the IPsec profile is ignored, and any change to the value set by the **set security-policy limit** command in the IPsec profile does not affect the virtual access.

VRF and Scalability of Baseline Configuration for IKEv2

The IKEv2 multi-SA does not allow simultaneous configuration of a VRF and a template on the IKEv2 profile. Instead, the VRF can be configured on AAA and applied to the virtual access interface at the time of its creation.

You can use the AAA attribute INTERFACE_CONFIG to specify the **ip vrf forwarding**, **ip unnumbered** commands, and other interface configuration mode commands that are applied on the virtual access interface.



Note

If you override VRF using AAA, you must also specify the **ip unnumbered** command using AAA because the **ip vrf forwarding** command removes the **ip unnumbered** command configuration from the interface.

Dynamic Virtual Tunnel Interface Life Cycle

IPsec profiles define the policy for DVTIs. The dynamic interface is created at the end of IKE Phase 1 and IKE Phase 1.5. The interface is deleted when the IPsec session to the peer is closed. The IPsec session is closed when both IKE and IPsec SAs to the peer are deleted.

Routing with IPsec Virtual Tunnel Interfaces

Because VTIs are routable interfaces, routing plays an important role in the encryption process. Traffic is encrypted only if it is forwarded out of the VTI, and traffic arriving on the VTI is decrypted and routed accordingly. VTIs allow you to establish an encryption tunnel using a real interface as the tunnel endpoint. You can route to the interface or apply services such as QoS, firewalls, network address translation (NAT), and NetFlow statistics as you would to any other interface. You can monitor the interface and route to it, and the interface provides benefits similar to other Cisco IOS interface.

FlexVPN Mixed Mode Support

The FlexVPN Mixed Mode feature provides support for carrying IPv4 traffic over IPsec IPv6 transport. This is the first phase towards providing dual stack support on the IPsec stack. This implementation does not support using a single IPsec security association (SA) pair for both IPv4 and IPv6 traffic.

This feature is only supported for Remote Access VPN with IKEv2 and Dynamic VTI.

The FlexVPN Mixed Mode feature provides support for carrying IPv6 traffic over IPsec IPv4 transport from Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.4.1.

IKE Profile Based Tunnel Selection

The IKE Profile Based Tunnel Selection feature uses the Internet Key Exchange (IKE) or Internet Key Exchange version 2 (IKEv2) profile to select a tunnel interface for an IPsec session. Use keywords **isakmp-profile** or **ikev2-profile** keyword in the **tunnel protection** command to specify an IKE profile or IKEv2 profile respectively.

The IKE Profile Based Tunnel Selection feature allows tunnel interfaces to share the tunnel source IP address and IPsec transform set without sharing the IPsec security association databases (SADBs) among tunnel interfaces thereby providing the following benefits:

- Tunnels are secure and there is no traffic leak.
- All tunnel types are supported.
- Seamless migration from IKEv1 to IKEv2 by accommodating configurations from legacy VPN technologies to coexist and share the local address with newer VPN technologies.
- Ability to set up multiple IKE and IPsec tunnels between peers sharing the same local or remote addresses.

Auto Tunnel Mode Support in IPsec

When configuring a VPN headend in a multiple vendor scenario, you must be aware of the technical details of the peer or responder. For example, some devices may use IPsec tunnels while others may use generic routing encapsulation (GRE) or IPsec tunnel, and sometimes, a tunnel may be IPv4 or IPv6. In the last case, you must configure an Internet Key Exchange (IKE) profile and a virtual template.

The Tunnel Mode Auto Selection feature eases the configuration and spares you about knowing the responder's details. This feature automatically applies the tunneling protocol (GRE or IPsec) and transport protocol (IPv4 or IPv6) on the virtual template as soon as the IKE profile creates the virtual access interface. This feature is useful on dual stack hubs aggregating multivendor remote access, such as Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client, Microsoft Windows7 Client, and so on.

Note

The Tunnel Mode Auto Selection feature eases the configuration for a responder only. The tunnel must be statically configured for an initiator.

IPSec Mixed Mode Support for VTI

The IPSec Mixed Mode feature provides support for carrying IPv4 traffic over IPsec IPv6 transport. This is the first phase towards providing dual stack support on the IPsec stack. This implementation does not support using a single IPsec security association (SA) pair for both IPv4 and IPv6 traffic.

This feature is supported for SVTI as well as DVTI and IKEv1 as well as IKEv2.

How to Configure IPsec Virtual Tunnel Interfaces

Configuring Static IPsec Virtual Tunnel Interfaces

SUMMARY STEPS

- 1. enable
- **2**. configure terminal
- **3.** crypto IPsec profile profile-name
- 4. set transform-set transform-set-name [transform-set-name2...transform-set-name6]
- 5. exit
- 6. interface type number
- 7. ip address address mask

- 8. tunnel mode ipsec ipv4
- **9**. **tunnel source** *interface-type interface-number*
- **10.** tunnel destination *ip-address*
- **11. tunnel protection IPsec profile** *profile-name*
- 12. end

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose	
Step 1	enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.	
	Example:	• Enter your password if prompted.	
	Device> enable		
Step 2	configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.	
	Example:		
	Device# configure terminal		
Step 3	crypto IPsec profile profile-name	Defines the IPsec parameters that are to be used for IPsec	
	Example:	encryption between two IPsec devices, and enters IPsec profile configuration mode.	
	Device(config)# crypto IPsec profile PROF		
Step 4	set transform-set transform-set-name [transform-set-name2transform-set-name6]	Specifies which transform sets can be used .	
	Example:		
	Device(ipsec-profile)# set transform-set tset		
Step 5	exit	Exits IPsec profile configuration mode, and enters global	
	Example:	configuration mode.	
	<pre>Device(ipsec-profile)# exit</pre>		
Step 6	interface type number	Specifies the interface on which the tunnel will be	
	Example:	configured and enters interface configuration mode.	
	Device(config)# interface tunnel 0		
Step 7	ip address address mask	Specifies the IP address and mask.	
	Example:		
	Device(config-if)# ip address 10.1.1.1 255.255.25.0		
Step 8	tunnel mode ipsec ipv4	Defines the mode for the tunnel.	
	Example:		
	<pre>Device(config-if)# tunnel mode ipsec ipv4</pre>		

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 9	tunnel source interface-type interface-number	Specifies the tunnel source as a loopback interface.
	Example:	
	Device(config-if)# tunnel source loopback 0	
Step 10	tunnel destination <i>ip-address</i>	Identifies the IP address of the tunnel destination.
	Example:	
	Device(config-if)# tunnel destination 172.16.1.1	
Step 11	tunnel protection IPsec profile profile-name	Associates a tunnel interface with an IPsec profile.
	Example:	
	Device(config-if)# tunnel protection IPsec profile PROF	
Step 12	end	Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged
	Example:	EXEC mode.
	Device(config-if)# end	

Configuring BGP over IPsec Virtual Tunnel Interfaces

Perform this task to optionally configure BGP over the virtual tunnel interfaces of two routers.

Before you begin

Perform steps in Configuring Static IPsec Virtual Tunnel Interfaces, on page 40.

SUMMARY STEPS

- **1.** router bgp autonomous-system-number
- 2. neighbor *ip-address* remote-as *autonomous-system-number*
- 3. network network-ip-address mask subnet-mask
- 4. exit
- 5. Enter the following commands on the second router.
- 6. router bgp autonomous-system-number
- 7. neighbor *ip-address* remote-as *autonomous-system-number*
- 8. network network-ip-address mask subnet-mask

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	router bgp autonomous-system-number	Enters router configuration mode and creates a BGP routing
	Example:	process.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# router bgp 65510	<i>autonomous-system-number</i> —Number of an autonomous system that identifies the router to other BGP routers and tags the routing information that is passed along. Number in the range from 1 to 65535.
		In the example, the first router in this procedure is identified as "65510".
Step 2	<pre>neighbor ip-address remote-as autonomous-system-number Example: Device (config-router) # neighbor 10.1.1.2 remote-as 65511</pre>	<i>ip-address</i> —IP address of the adjacent router's tunnel interface. <i>autonomous-system-number</i> —Number of an autonomous system that identifies the router of the second router. Number in the range from 1 to 65535.
Step 3	<pre>network network-ip-address mask subnet-mask Example: Device(config-router)# network 2.2.2.0 mask 255.255.255.0</pre>	 <i>network-ip-address</i>—IP address of the network advertised in BGP. For example, the IP address of a loopback interface. <i>subnet-mask</i>—subnet mask of the network advertised in BGP. Note The BGP network command network and mask <i>must</i> exactly match a route that is already in the routing table for it to be brought into BGP and advertised to BGP neighbors. This is different from EIGRP, OSPF where the network statement just has to "cover" an interface network and it will pick up the network with mask from the interface.
Step 4	exit Example: Device(config-router)# exit	Exits router configuration mode.
Step 5	Enter the following commands on the second router.	
Step 6	<pre>router bgp autonomous-system-number Example: Device(config)# router bgp 65511</pre>	Enters router configuration mode and creates a BGP routing process. <i>autonomous-system-number</i> —Number of an autonomous system that identifies the router to other BGP routers and tags the routing information that is passed along. Number in the range from 1 to 65535. In the example, the second router in this procedure is identified as "65511".
Step 7	<pre>neighbor ip-address remote-as autonomous-system-number Example: Device (config-router) # neighbor 10.1.1.1 remote-as 65510</pre>	<i>ip-address</i> —IP address of the adjacent router's tunnel interface.

	Command or Action	Purpose	
Step 8	network network-ip-address mask subnet-mask	network-	-ip-address—IP address of the network advertised
	Example:	in BGP. I	For example, the IP address of a loopback interface.
	Device(config-router)# network 1.1.1.0 mask 255.255.255.0	<i>subnet-n</i> BGP.	nask—subnet mask of the network advertised in
		Note	Use the exact network IP address and subnet mask.

Configuring Dynamic IPsec Virtual Tunnel Interfaces

SUMMARY STEPS

- 1. enable
- **2**. configure terminal
- 3. crypto ipsec profile profile-name
- **4. set transform-set** transform-set-name [transform-set-name2...transform-set-name6]
- 5. exit
- 6. interface virtual-template *number* type tunnel
- 7. tunnel mode ipsec ipv4
- 8. tunnel protection IPsec profile profile-name
- 9. exit
- **10.** crypto isakamp profile profile-name
- **11.** match identity address *ip-address mask*
- 12. virtual template template-number
- 13. end

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.
	Example:	• Enter your password if prompted.
	Device> enable	
Step 2	configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
	Example:	
	Device# configure terminal	
Step 3	crypto ipsec profile profile-name	Defines the IPsec parameters that are to be used for IPsec
	Example:	encryption between two IPsec devices and enters IPsec
	<pre>Device(config)# crypto ipsec profile PROF</pre>	

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	set transform-set transform-set-name	Specifies which transform sets can be used with the crypto
	[ransjorm-set-name2transjorm-set-name0]	map entry.
	Example: Device(ipsec-profile)# set transform-set tset	
	•.	
Step 5		Exits ipsec profile configuration mode and enters global configuration mode.
	Example:	
	Device(ipsec-profile) # exit	
Step 6	interface virtual-template number type tunnel	Defines a virtual-template tunnel interface and enters
	Example:	incriace configuration mode.
	<pre>Device(config)# interface virtual-template 2 type tunnel</pre>	
Step 7	tunnel mode ipsec ipv4	Defines the mode for the tunnel.
	Example:	
	<pre>Device(config-if)# tunnel mode ipsec ipv4</pre>	
Step 8	tunnel protection IPsec profile profile-name	Associates a tunnel interface with an IPsec profile.
	Example:	
	<pre>Device(config-if) # tunnel protection ipsec profile PROF</pre>	
Step 9	exit	Exits interface configuration mode.
	Example:	
	Device(config-if)# exit	
Step 10	crypto isakamp profile profile-name	Defines the ISAKMP profile to be used for the virtual
	Example:	template.
	<pre>Device(config)# crypto isakamp profile profile1</pre>	
Step 11	match identity address ip-address mask	Matches an identity from the ISAKMP profile and enters
	Example:	isakmp-profile configuration mode.
	Device(conf-isa-prof)# match identity address 10.1.1.0 255.255.255.0	
Step 12	virtual template template-number	Specifies the virtual template attached to the ISAKMP
	Example:	profile.
	<pre>Device(config)# virtual-template 1</pre>	
Step 13	end	Exits global configuration mode and enters privileged
	Example:	EXEC mode.
	Device(config)# end	

Configuring Multi-SA Support for Dynamic Virtual Tunnel Interfaces Using IKEv1



Note Security threats, as well as the cryptographic technologies to help protect against them, are constantly changing. For more information about the latest Cisco cryptographic recommendations, see the Next Generation Encryption (NGE) white paper.

SUMMARY STEPS

- 1. enable
- 2. configure terminal
- 3. ip vrf vrf-name
- 4. rd route-distinguisher
- 5. exit
- 6. crypto keyring keyring-name
- 7. pre-shared-key address key key
- 8. exit
- 9. crypto isakmp profile profile-name
- **10.** keyring keyring-name
- **11.** match identity address mask
- **12.** virtual-template template-number
- 13. exit
- **14.** crypto ipsec transform-set transform-set-name transform1 [transform2] [transform3]
- 15. exit
- 16. crypto ipsec profile name
- 17. set security-policy limit maximum-limit
- **18.** set transform-set transform-set-name [transform-set-name2 transform-set-name6]
- 19. exit
- 20. interface virtual-template number type tunnel
- 21. ip vrf forwarding vrf-name
- **22.** ip unnumbered type number
- 23. tunnel mode ipsec ipv4
- 24. tunnel protection profile ipsec profile-name
- 25. end

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.
	Example:	
	Device> enable	

Step 2 configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal Enters global configuration mode. Step 3 ip vrf vrf-name Example: Device (config)# ip vrf var-100-1 Defines the VRF instance and enters VRF configuration mode. Step 4 rd route-distinguisher Example: Device (config-vrf)# rd 100:21 Creates routing and forwarding tables for a VRF. Step 5 exit Example: Device (config-vrf)# rd 100:21 Exits VRF configuration mode and enters global configuration mode. Step 6 crypto keyring-name Example: Device (config)# crypto keyring claco=100-1 Defines a crypto key ring and enters key ring configuration mode. Step 7 pre-shared-key address key key Example: Device (config-keyring) # pre-shared-key address 10.1.1.1 key claco=100-1 Defines the preshared key to be used for Internet Key Example: Device (config-keyring) # pre-shared-key address 10.1.1.1 key claco=100-1 Step 8 exit Example: Device (config-keyring) # pre-shared-key address 10.1.1.1 key claco=100-1 Defines an ISAKMP profile and enters global configuration mode. Step 9 crypto isakmp profile profile-name Example: Device (config-keyring) # exit Configures a key ring in ISAKMP mode. Step 10 keyring keyring-name Example: Device (config-ta=prof) # keyring claco=100-1 Matches an identity from the ISAKMP profile. Step 11 match identity address mask Example: Device(conf-isa=prof) # keyring claco=100-1 Matches an identity from the ISAKMP profile. <th></th> <th>Command or Action</th> <th>Purpose</th>		Command or Action	Purpose
Example: Devices configure terminal Defines the VRF instance and enters VRF configuration mode. Step 3 ip vrf vrf-name Example: Device (config) + ip vrf vtr-100-1 Defines the VRF instance and enters VRF configuration mode. Step 4 rd route-distinguisher Example: Device (config-vrf) + rd 100:21 Creates routing and forwarding tables for a VRF. Step 5 exit Example: Device (config-vrf) + exit Exits VRF configuration mode and enters global configuration mode. Step 6 crypto keyring-name Example: Device (config-verf) + exit Defines a crypto key ring and enters key ring configuration mode. Step 7 pre-shared-key address key key Example: Device (config-keyring) + pre-shared-key address Defines the preshared key to be used for Internet Key Exchange (IKE) authentication. Step 8 exit Example: Device (config-keyring) + exit Exits keyring configuration mode and enters global configuration mode. Step 9 crypto isakmp profile profile-name Example: Device (config) + crypto isakmp profile citeorisakmp-profile100-1 Defines an ISAKMP profile and enters ISAKMP configuration mode. Step 10 keyring keyring-name Example: Device (conf-isa-profile keyring cisco-100-1 Configures a key ring in ISAKMP profile. Step 11 match identity address mask Example: Device (conf-isa-profile keyring cisco-100-1 Matches an identity from the ISAKMP profile. Step 12<	Step 2	configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Device4 configure terminal Step 3 ip vrf vrf-name Example: Device (config) + ip vrf Vxx-100-1 Defines the VRF instance and enters VRF configuration mode. Step 4 rd route-distinguisher Example: Device (config-vrf) # rd 100:21 Creates routing and forwarding tables for a VRF. Step 5 exit Example: Device (config-vrf) # exit Exits VRF configuration mode and enters global configuration mode. Step 6 crypto keyring keyring-name Example: Device (config) + crypto keyring clace-100-1 Defines a crypto key ring and enters key ring configuration mode. Step 7 pre-shared-key address key key Example: Device (config-keyring) + pre-shared-key address Device (config-keyring) + pre-shared-key address Defines the preshared key to be used for Internet Key Exchange (IKE) authentication. Step 8 exit Example: Device (config-keyring) + pre-shared-key address Defines an ISAKMP profile and enters global configuration mode. Step 9 crypto isakmp profile profile-name Example: Device (config) + crypto isakmp profile cisco-isakmp-profile-100-1 Defines an ISAKMP profile and enters ISAKMP configuration mode. Step 10 keyring keyring-name Example: Device (conf-isa-profil + keyring cisco-100-1 Matches an identity from the ISAKMP profile. Step 11 match identity address mask Example: Device (conf-isa-profil + keyring cisco-100-1 Matches an identity from the ISAKMP profile. St		Example:	
Step 3 ip vrf vrf.name Defines the VRF instance and enters VRF configuration mode. Step 4 rd route-distinguisher Creates routing and forwarding tables for a VRF. Step 4 rd route-distinguisher Creates routing and forwarding tables for a VRF. Step 5 exit Exits VRF configuration mode and enters global configuration mode. Step 6 crypto keyring keyring-name Defines a crypto key ring and enters key ring configuration mode. Step 7 pre-shared-key address key key Defines the preshared key to be used for Internet Key Example: Device (config-keyring) # pre-shared-key address Defines the preshared key to be used for Internet Key Exchange (IKF) authentication. Step 8 exit Example: Device (config-keyring) # pre-shared-key address Device (config-keyring) # pre-shared-key address Defines an ISAKMP profile and enters global configuration mode. Step 8 exit Example: Device (config-keyring) # exit Step 9 crypto isakmp profile-name Example: Device (config-keyring-name Device (config-keyring) = exit Defines an ISAKMP profile and enters ISAKMP Configuration mode. Step 10 keyring keyring-name Example: Device (config-keyring) = exit Device (config-keyring) = e		Device# configure terminal	
Example: Device (config) # ip vrf VRF-100-1 mode. Step 4 rd roue-distinguisher Example: Device (config-vrf) # rd 100:21 Creates routing and forwarding tables for a VRF. Step 5 exit Example: Device (config-vrf) # rd 100:21 Exits VRF configuration mode and enters global configuration mode. Step 6 erypto keyring keyring-name Example: Device (config-vrf) # exit Defines a crypto key ring and enters key ring configuration mode. Step 7 pre-shared-key address key key Example: Device (config-keyring) # pre-shared-key address 10.1.1.1 key cisco-100-1 Defines the preshared key to be used for Internet Key Example: Device (config-keyring) # pre-shared-key address Step 8 exit Example: Device (config-keyring) # pre-shared-key address Defines an ISAKMP profile and enters global configuration mode. Step 8 exit Example: Device (config-keyring) # exit Exits keyring configuration mode and enters global configuration mode. Step 9 crypto isakmp profile-name Example: Device (config-keyring) # exit Configures a key ring in ISAKMP mode. Step 10 keyring keyring-name Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # metch identity address Device (conf-isa-prof) # metch identity address Device (conf-isa-prof) # metch identity address Matches an identity from the ISAKMP profile. Step 11 match identity address mask Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # metch identity address Specifies the virtual templa	Step 3	ip vrf vrf-name	Defines the VRF instance and enters VRF configuration
Device (config)# ip vrf vRP-100-1 Step 4 rd route-distinguisher Creates routing and forwarding tables for a VRF. Example: Device (config-vrf)# rd 100:21 Exits VRF configuration mode and enters global configuration mode. Step 5 exit Example: Device (config-vrf)# exit Exits VRF configuration mode and enters global configuration mode. Step 6 crypto keyring keyring-name Example: Device (config)# crypto keyring cisco-100-1 Defines a crypto key ring and enters key ring configuration mode. Step 7 pre-shared-key address key key Example: Device (config-keyring)# pre-shared-key address 10.1.1.1 key cisco-100-1 Defines the preshared key to be used for Internet Key Exchange (IKE) authentication. Step 8 exit Example: Device (config-keyring)# pre-shared-key address 10.1.1.1 key cisco-100-1 Defines an ISAKMP profile and enters ISAKMP configuration mode. Step 9 crypto isakmp profile profile-name Example: Device (config)# crypto isakmp profile ciaco-isakmp-profile-100-1 Defines an ISAKMP profile and enters ISAKMP configuration mode. Step 10 keyring keyring-name Example: Device(conf-isa-prof)# keyring cisco-100-1 Configures a key ring in ISAKMP mode. Example: Device(conf-isa-prof)# keyring cisco-100-1 Matches an identity from the ISAKMP profile. Step 11 match identity address mask Example: Specifies the virtual template that will be used to clone virtua		Example:	mode.
Step 4 rd route-distinguisher Creates routing and forwarding tables for a VRF. Step 5 exit Example: Device (config-vrf) # rd 100:21 Exits VRF configuration mode and enters global configuration mode. Step 6 exit Example: Device (config+vrf) # exit Defines a crypto key ring and enters key ring configuration mode. Step 7 pre-shared-key address key key Example: Device (config+keyring) # pre-shared-key address Defines the preshared key to be used for Internet Key Exchange (IKE) authentication. Step 8 exit Exits keyring configuration mode and enters global configuration mode. Step 9 erypto keyring) # pre-shared-key address Defines the preshared key to be used for Internet Key Exchange (IKE) authentication. Step 8 exit Exits keyring configuration mode and enters global configuration mode. Step 9 erypto isakmp profile profile-name Example: Device (config) # crypto isakmp profile profile Defines an ISAKMP profile and enters ISAKMP configuration mode. Step 10 keyring keyring-name Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # keyring clsco-100-1 Configures a key ring in ISAKMP mode. Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # keyring clsco-100-1 Step 11 match identity address mask Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # match identity address interfaces. Step 12 virtual-template template-number Example: Specifies the virtual templat		Device(config)# ip vrf VRF-100-1	
Example: Device (config-vrf) + rd 100:21Exits VRF configuration mode and enters global configuration mode.Step 5exit Example: Device (config) + crypto keyring cisco-100-1Exits VRF configuration mode.Step 6crypto keyring keyring-name Example: Device (config) + crypto keyring cisco-100-1Defines a crypto key ring and enters key ring configuration mode.Step 7pre-shared-key address key key Example: Device (config-keyring) + pre-shared-key address 10.1.1.1 key cisco-100-1Defines the preshared key to be used for Internet Key Exchange (IKE) authentication.Step 8exit Example: Device (config-keyring) + pre-shared-key address 10.1.1.1 key cisco-100-1Defines an ISAKMP profile and enters global configuration mode.Step 8exit Example: Device (config-keyring) + exitDefines an ISAKMP profile and enters ISAKMP configuration mode.Step 9crypto isakmp profile profile-name Example: Device (configi keyring-name Example: Device (configi keyring cisco-100-1Defines an ISAKMP profile and enters ISAKMP configuration mode.Step 10keyring keyring-name Example: Device (confisa-prof) + keyring cisco-100-1Configures a key ring in ISAKMP mode.Step 11match identity address mask Example: Device (confisa-prof) + match identity address Device (confisa-prof) + match identity address Devic	Step 4	rd route-distinguisher	Creates routing and forwarding tables for a VRF.
Device (config-vrf) # rd 100:21 Step 5 exit Example: Device (config-vrf) # exit Exits VRF configuration mode and enters global configuration mode. Step 6 crypto keyring keyring-name Example: Device (config) # crypto keyring cisco-100-1 Defines a crypto key ring and enters key ring configuration mode. Step 7 pre-shared-key address key key Example: Device(config-keyring) # pre-shared-key address 10.1.1.1 key cisco-100-1 Defines the preshared key to be used for Internet Key Exchange (IKE) authentication. Step 8 exit Example: Device(config-keyring) # pre-shared-key address 10.1.1.1 key cisco-100-1 Exits keyring configuration mode and enters global configuration mode. Step 9 crypto isakmp profile profile-name Example: Device(config) # crypto isakmp profile cisco-isakmp-profile-100-1 Defines an ISAKMP profile and enters ISAKMP configuration mode. Step 10 keyring keyring-name Example: Device(conf-isa-prof) # keyring cisco-100-1 Configures a key ring in ISAKMP mode. Example: Device(conf-isa-prof) # keyring cisco-100-1 Matches an identity from the ISAKMP profile. Step 11 match identity address mask Example: Device(conf-isa-prof) # match identity address 10.1.1.0 253.253.253.0 Specifies the virtual template that will be used to clone virtual access interfaces.		Example:	
Step 5 exit Example: Device (config-vrf) # exit Exits VRF configuration mode and enters global configuration mode. Step 6 crypto keyring keyring-name Example: Device (config) # crypto keyring cisco-100-1 Defines a crypto key ring and enters key ring configuration mode. Step 7 pre-shared-key address key key Example: Device (config-keyring) # pre-shared-key address 10.1.1.1 key cisco-100-1 Defines the preshared key to be used for Internet Key Exchange (IKE) authentication. Step 8 exit Example: Device (config-keyring) # exit Defines an ISAKMP profile and enters global configuration mode. Step 9 crypto isakmp profile profile-name Example: Device (config) # crypto isakmp profile cisco-isakmp-profile-100-1 Defines an ISAKMP profile and enters ISAKMP configuration mode. Step 10 keyring keyring-name Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # keyring cisco-100-1 Configures a key ring in ISAKMP mode. Step 11 match identity address mask Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # match identity address 10.1.1.0 255.255.255.0 Matches an identity from the ISAKMP profile. Step 12 virtual-template template-number Example: Specifies the virtual template that will be used to clone virtual access interfaces.		Device(config-vrf)# rd 100:21	
Example: Device (config-vrf)# exitconfiguration mode.Step 6crypto keyring keyring-name Example: Device (config)# crypto keyring cisco-100-1Defines a crypto key ring and enters key ring configuration mode.Step 7pre-shared-key address key key Example: Device (config-keyring)# pre-shared-key address 10.1.1.1 key cisco-100-1Defines the preshared key to be used for Internet Key Exchange (IKE) authentication.Step 8exit Example: Device (config-keyring)# pre-shared-key addressExits keyring configuration mode and enters global configuration mode.Step 9crypto isakmp profile profile-name Example: Device (config)# crypto isakmp profile cisco-isakmp-profile-100-1Defines an ISAKMP profile and enters ISAKMP configuration mode.Step 10keyring keyring-name Example: Device (conf-isa-prof)# keyring cisco-100-1Configures a key ring in ISAKMP mode.Step 11match identity address mask Example: Device (conf-isa-prof)# match identity address 10.1.1.0 255.255.0Matches an identity from the ISAKMP profile.Step 12virtual-template template-number Example: Device (conf-isa-prof)# match identity addressSpecifies the virtual template that will be used to clone virtual access interfaces.	Step 5	exit	Exits VRF configuration mode and enters global
Device (config-vrf) # exitStep 6crypto keyring keyring-name Example: Device (config) # crypto keyring cisco-100-1Defines a crypto key ring and enters key ring configuration mode.Step 7pre-shared-key address key key Example: Device (config-keyring) # pre-shared-key address 10.1.1.1 key cisco-100-1Defines the preshared key to be used for Internet Key Exchange (IKE) authentication.Step 8exit Example: Device (config-keyring) # exitExits keyring configuration mode and enters global configuration mode.Step 9crypto isakmp profile profile-name Example: Device (config) # crypto isakmp profile cisco-isakmp-profile-100-1Defines an ISAKMP profile and enters ISAKMP configuration mode.Step 10keyring keyring-name Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # keyring cisco-100-1Configures a key ring in ISAKMP mode.Step 11match identity address mask Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # match identity address 10.1.1.0 255.255.255.0Matches an identity from the ISAKMP profile.Step 12virtual-template template-number Example:Specifies the virtual template that will be used to clone virtual access interfaces.		Example:	configuration mode.
Step 6 crypto keyring keyring-name Defines a crypto key ring and enters key ring configuration mode. Step 7 pre-shared-key address key key Defines the preshared key to be used for Internet Key Example: Device (config-keyring) # pre-shared-key address Defines the preshared key to be used for Internet Key Exchange (IKE) authentication. Step 8 exit Exits keyring configuration mode. Step 8 exit Exits keyring configuration mode and enters global configuration mode. Step 9 crypto isakmp profile profile-name Defines an ISAKMP profile and enters ISAKMP configuration mode. Step 10 keyring keyring-name Configures a key ring in ISAKMP mode. Example: Device (config) # crypto isakmp profile cisco-100-1 Configures a key ring in ISAKMP mode. Step 11 match identity address mask Matches an identity from the ISAKMP profile. Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # match identity address 10.11.0 255.255.255.0 Specifies the virtual template that will be used to clone virtual access interfaces.		Device(config-vrf)# exit	
Example: Device(config) # crypto keyring cisco-100-1mode.Step 7pre-shared-key address key key Example: Device(config-keyring) # pre-shared-key address 10.1.1.1 key cisco-100-1Defines the preshared key to be used for Internet Key Exchange (IKE) authentication.Step 8exit Example: Device(config-keyring) # exitExits keyring configuration mode and enters global configuration mode.Step 9crypto isakmp profile profile-name Example: Device(config) # crypto isakmp profile cisco-isakmp-profile=100-1Defines an ISAKMP profile and enters ISAKMP configuration mode.Step 10keyring keyring-name Example: Device(conf-isa-prof) # keyring cisco-100-1Configures a key ring in ISAKMP mode.Step 11match identity address mask Example: Device(conf-isa-prof) # match identity address 10.1.1.0 255.255.255.0Matches an identity from the ISAKMP profile.Step 12virtual-template template-number Example:Specifies the virtual template that will be used to clone virtual access interfaces.	Step 6	crypto keyring keyring-name	Defines a crypto key ring and enters key ring configuration
Device (config) # crypto keyring cisco-100-1Step 7pre-shared-key address key key Example: Device (config-keyring) # pre-shared-key address 10.1.1.1 key cisco-100-1Defines the preshared key to be used for Internet Key Exchange (IKE) authentication.Step 8exit Example: Device (config-keyring) # exitExits keyring configuration mode and enters global configuration mode.Step 9crypto isakmp profile profile-name Example: Device (config) # crypto isakmp profile cisco-isakmp-profile-100-1Defines an ISAKMP profile and enters ISAKMP configuration mode.Step 10keyring keyring-name Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # keyring cisco-100-1Configures a key ring in ISAKMP mode.Step 11match identity address mask Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # match identity address 10.1.1.0 255.255.255.0Matches an identity from the ISAKMP profile.Step 12virtual-template template-number Example: Device [conf-isa-prof] # match identity addressSpecifies the virtual template that will be used to clone virtual access interfaces.		Example:	mode.
Step 7 pre-shared-key address key key Defines the preshared key to be used for Internet Key Example: Device (config-keyring) # pre-shared-key address Defines the preshared key to be used for Internet Key Step 8 exit Exits keyring configuration mode and enters global Device (config-keyring) # exit Exits keyring configuration mode and enters global Step 8 exit Exits keyring configuration mode. Device (config-keyring) # exit Defines an ISAKMP profile and enters ISAKMP Step 9 crypto isakmp profile name Defines an ISAKMP profile and enters ISAKMP Example: Device (config) # crypto isakmp profile Configuration mode. Step 10 keyring keyring-name Configures a key ring in ISAKMP mode. Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # keyring cisco-100-1 Matches an identity from the ISAKMP profile. Step 11 match identity address mask Matches an identity from the ISAKMP profile. Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # match identity address 10.1.1.0 255.255.0 Specifies the virtual template that will be used to clone virtual access interfaces.		Device(config)# crypto keyring cisco-100-1	
Example: Device (config-keyring) # pre-shared-key address 10.1.1.1 key cisco-100-1Exchange (IKE) authentication.Step 8exit Example: Device (config-keyring) # exitExits keyring configuration mode and enters global configuration mode.Step 9crypto isakmp profile profile-name Example: Device (config) # crypto isakmp profile cisco-isakmp-profile-100-1Defines an ISAKMP profile and enters ISAKMP configuration mode.Step 10keyring keyring-name Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # keyring cisco-100-1Configures a key ring in ISAKMP mode.Step 11match identity address mask Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # match identity address 10.1.1.0 255.255.255.0Matches an identity from the ISAKMP profile.Step 12virtual-template template-number Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # match identity address 10.1.1.0 255.255.255.0Specifies the virtual template that will be used to clone virtual access interfaces.	Step 7	pre-shared-key address key key	Defines the preshared key to be used for Internet Key
Device (config-keyring) # pre-shared-key address 10.1.1.1 key cisco-100-1Exits keyring configuration mode and enters global configuration mode.Step 8exit Example: Device (config-keyring) # exitExits keyring configuration mode.Step 9crypto isakmp profile profile-name Example: Device (config) # crypto isakmp profile cisco-isakmp-profile-100-1Defines an ISAKMP profile and enters ISAKMP configuration mode.Step 10keyring keyring-name Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # keyring cisco-100-1Configures a key ring in ISAKMP mode.Step 11match identity address mask Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # match identity address 10.1.1.0 255.255.255.0Matches an identity from the ISAKMP profile.Step 12virtual-template template template number Example: Device (sonf-isa-prof) # match identity addressSpecifies the virtual template that will be used to clone virtual access interfaces.		Example:	Exchange (IKE) authentication.
Step 8 exit Exits keyring configuration mode and enters global configuration mode. Step 8 exit Exits keyring configuration mode. Step 9 crypto isakmp profile profile-name Defines an ISAKMP profile and enters ISAKMP configuration mode. Step 9 crypto isakmp-profile-name Defines an ISAKMP profile and enters ISAKMP configuration mode. Step 9 crypto isakmp-profile-100-1 Defines an ISAKMP profile and enters ISAKMP configuration mode. Step 10 keyring keyring-name Configures a key ring in ISAKMP mode. Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # keyring cisco-100-1 Configures a key ring in ISAKMP mode. Step 11 match identity address mask Matches an identity from the ISAKMP profile. Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # match identity address 10.1.1.0 255.255.255.0 Specifies the virtual template that will be used to clone virtual access interfaces. Step 12 virtual-template template-number Specifies the virtual template that will be used to clone virtual access interfaces.		Device (config-keyring) # pre-shared-key address	
Step 8 exit Extra keyring configuration mode and enters global configuration mode. Step 9 Example: Device (config-keyring) # exit Defines an ISAKMP profile and enters ISAKMP configuration mode. Step 9 crypto isakmp profile profile-name Defines an ISAKMP profile and enters ISAKMP configuration mode. Step 9 Example: Device (config) # crypto isakmp profile cisco-isakmp-profile-100-1 Defines an ISAKMP profile and enters ISAKMP configuration mode. Step 10 keyring keyring-name Configures a key ring in ISAKMP mode. Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # keyring cisco-100-1 Configures a key ring in ISAKMP mode. Step 11 match identity address mask Matches an identity from the ISAKMP profile. Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # match identity address 10.1.1.0 255.255.255.0 Specifies the virtual template that will be used to clone virtual access interfaces. Step 12 virtual-template template-number Specifies the virtual template that will be used to clone virtual access interfaces.		10.1.1.1 key CISCO-100-1	
Example: Device (config-keyring) # exitDefines an ISAKMP profile and enters ISAKMP configuration mode.Step 9crypto isakmp profile profile-name Example: Device (config) # crypto isakmp profile cisco-isakmp-profile-100-1Defines an ISAKMP profile and enters ISAKMP configuration mode.Step 10keyring keyring-name Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # keyring cisco-100-1Configures a key ring in ISAKMP mode.Step 11match identity address mask Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # match identity address 10.1.1.0 255.255.255.0Matches an identity from the ISAKMP profile.Step 12virtual-template template template number Example:Specifies the virtual template that will be used to clone virtual access interfaces.	Step 8	exit	Exits keyring configuration mode and enters global configuration mode.
Step 9 crypto isakmp profile profile-name Defines an ISAKMP profile and enters ISAKMP configuration mode. Step 9 crypto isakmp profile config) # crypto isakmp profile cisco-isakmp-profile-100-1 Defines an ISAKMP profile and enters ISAKMP configuration mode. Step 10 keyring keyring-name Configures a key ring in ISAKMP mode. Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # keyring cisco-100-1 Configures a key ring in ISAKMP mode. Step 11 match identity address mask Matches an identity from the ISAKMP profile. Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # match identity address 10.1.1.0 255.255.255.0 Specifies the virtual template that will be used to clone virtual access interfaces. Step 12 virtual-template template-number Specifies the virtual template that will be used to clone virtual access interfaces.		Example:	
Step 9 crypto isakmp profile profile name Defines an ISAKMP profile and enters ISAKMP configuration mode. Example: Device(config) # crypto isakmp profile cisco-isakmp-profile-100-1 Configures a key ring in ISAKMP mode. Step 10 keyring keyring-name Configures a key ring in ISAKMP mode. Example: Device(conf-isa-prof) # keyring cisco-100-1 Configures a key ring in ISAKMP mode. Step 11 match identity address mask Matches an identity from the ISAKMP profile. Example: Device(conf-isa-prof) # match identity address 10.1.1.0 255.255.255.0 Specifies the virtual template that will be used to clone virtual access interfaces. Step 12 virtual-template template-number Example: Specifies the virtual template that will be used to clone virtual access interfaces.		Device (config-keyring) # exit	
Example: Device (config) # crypto isakmp profile cisco-isakmp-profile-100-1 Configures a key ring in ISAKMP mode. Step 10 keyring keyring-name Configures a key ring in ISAKMP mode. Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # keyring cisco-100-1 Configures a key ring in ISAKMP mode. Step 11 match identity address mask Matches an identity from the ISAKMP profile. Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # match identity address 10.1.1.0 255.255.255.0 Specifies the virtual template that will be used to clone virtual access interfaces. Step 12 virtual-template template-number Specifies the virtual access interfaces.	Step 9	crypto isakmp profile profile-name	Defines an ISAKMP profile and enters ISAKMP
Device (config) # crypto isakmp profile cisco-isakmp-profile-100-1 Step 10 keyring keyring-name Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # keyring cisco-100-1 Device (conf-isa-prof) # keyring cisco-100-1 Matches an identity from the ISAKMP profile. Step 11 match identity address mask Matches an identity from the ISAKMP profile. Device (conf-isa-prof) # match identity address 10.1.1.0 255.255.255.0 Specifies the virtual template that will be used to clone virtual access interfaces.		Example:	
Step 10 keyring keyring-name Configures a key ring in ISAKMP mode. Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # keyring cisco-100-1 Configures a key ring in ISAKMP mode. Step 11 match identity address mask Matches an identity from the ISAKMP profile. Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # match identity address 10.1.1.0 255.255.255.0 Matches an identity the virtual template that will be used to clone virtual access interfaces. Step 12 virtual-template template-number Specifies the virtual template that will be used to clone virtual access interfaces.		Device(config)# crypto isakmp profile cisco-isakmp-profile-100-1	
Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # keyring cisco-100-1 Step 11 match identity address mask Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # match identity address 10.1.1.0 255.255.0 Step 12 virtual-template template-number Example: Specifies the virtual template that will be used to clone virtual access interfaces.	Step 10	keyring keyring-name	Configures a key ring in ISAKMP mode.
Device (conf-isa-prof) # keyring cisco-100-1 Step 11 match identity address mask Matches an identity from the ISAKMP profile. Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # match identity address 10.1.1.0 255.255.255.0 Specifies the virtual template that will be used to clone virtual access interfaces. Step 12 virtual-template template number Specifies the virtual template that will be used to clone virtual access interfaces.		Example:	
Step 11 match identity address mask Matches an identity from the ISAKMP profile. Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # match identity address 10.1.1.0 255.255.255.0 Matches an identity from the ISAKMP profile. Step 12 virtual-template template-number Specifies the virtual template that will be used to clone virtual access interfaces.		Device(conf-isa-prof)# keyring cisco-100-1	
Example: Device (conf-isa-prof) # match identity address 10.1.1.0 255.255.0 Step 12 virtual-template template-number Specifies the virtual template that will be used to clone virtual access interfaces.	Step 11	match identity address mask	Matches an identity from the ISAKMP profile.
Device (conf-isa-prof) # match identity address 10.1.1.0 255.255.0 Specifies the virtual template that will be used to clone virtual access interfaces. Step 12 virtual-template template-number Example: Specifies the virtual template that will be used to clone		Example:	
Step 12virtual-template template-numberSpecifies the virtual template that will be used to clone virtual access interfaces.Example:		Device(conf-isa-prof)# match identity address 10.1.1.0 255.255.255.0	
Example: virtual access interfaces.	Step 12	virtual-template template-number	Specifies the virtual template that will be used to clone
		Example:	virtual access interfaces.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(conf-isa-prof)# virtual-template 101	
Step 13	exit	Exits ISAKMP profile configuration mode and enters
	Example:	global configuration mode.
	<pre>Device(conf-isa-prof)# exit</pre>	
Step 14	crypto ipsec transform-set transform-set-name transform1 [transform2] [transform3]	Defines the transform set and enters crypto transform configuration mode.
	Example:	
	Device(config)# crypto ipsec transform-set cisco esp-aes esp-sha-hmac	
Step 15	exit	Exits crypto transform configuration mode and enters
	Example:	global configuration mode.
	<pre>Device(conf-crypto-trans)# exit</pre>	
Step 16	crypto ipsec profile name	Defines the IPsec parameters used for IPsec encryption
	Example:	between two IPsec devices, and enters IPsec profile
	Device(config)# crypto ipsec profile cisco-ipsec-profile-101	
Step 17	set security-policy limit maximum-limit	Defines an upper limit to the number of flows that can be
	Example:	created for an individual virtual access interface.
	Device(ipsec-profile)# set security-policy limit 3	
Step 18	set transform-set transform-set-name [transform-set-name2 transform-set-name6]	Specifies the transform sets to be used with the crypto map entry.
	Example:	
	Device(ipsec-profile)# set transform-set cisco	
Step 19	exit	Exits IPsec profile and enters global configuration mode.
	Example:	
	Device(ipsec-profile)# exit	
Step 20	interface virtual-template number type tunnel	Creates a virtual template interface that can be configured
	Example:	interface and enters interface configuration mode.
	<pre>Device(config)# interface virtual-template 101 type tunnel</pre>	
Step 21	ip vrf forwarding vrf-name	Associates a VRF instance with a virtual-template
	Example:	interface.
	<pre>Device(config-if)# ip vrf forwarding VRF-100-1</pre>	
Step 22	ip unnumbered type number	Enables IP processing on an interface without assigning
		1. 1. 1. ID 11 4 41 1 4 C

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<pre>Device(config-if)# ip unnumbered GigabitEthernet 0.0</pre>	
Step 23	tunnel mode ipsec ipv4	Defines the mode for the tunnel.
	Example:	
	Device(config-if)# tunnel mode ipsec ipv4	
Step 24	tunnel protection profile ipsec profile-name	Associates a tunnel interface with an IPsec profile.
	Example:	
	Device(config-if)# tunnel protection ipsec profile PROF	
Step 25	end	Exits interface configuration mode, and returns to
	Example:	privileged EXEC mode.
	Device(config-if)# end	

Configuring Multi-SA Support for Dynamic Virtual Tunnel Interfaces Using IKEv2

Perform the following tasks to configure Multi-SA for DVTIs using IKEv2:

Defining an AAA Attribute List

SUMMARY STEPS

- 1. enable
- 2. configure terminal
- 3. aaa new-model
- 4. aaa authorization network list-name local
- 5. aaa attribute list list-name
- 6. attribute type name value
- 7. attribute type name value
- 8. aaa session-id common
- 9. end

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.
	Example:	
	Device> enable	

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
	Example:	
	Device# configure terminal	
Step 3	aaa new-model	Enables the AAA access control model.
	Example:	
	Device(config)# aaa new-model	
Step 4	aaa authorization network list-name local	Sets parameters that restrict user access to a network.
	Example:	
	Device(config)# aaa authorization network group-list local	
Step 5	aaa attribute list list-name	Specifies an AAA attribute list that is defined in global
	Example:	configuration mode.
	Device(config)# aaa attribute list aaa-cisco-ikev2-profile-100-1	• The "interface-config" attribute in the AAA attribute list is used to apply interface commands on the virtual access interface associated with the IKEv2 session.
Step 6	attribute type name value	Defines an attribute type that is to be added to an attribute
	Example:	list locally on a device.
	Device(config)# attribute type interface-config "ip vrf forwarding VRF-100-1"	
Step 7	attribute type name value	Defines an attribute type that is to be added to an attribute
	Example:	list locally on a device.
	Device(config)# attribute type interface-config "ip unnumbered Ethernet 0/0"	
Step 8	aaa session-id common	Ensures that the same session ID will be used for each AAA
	Example:	accounting service type within a call.
	Device(config)# aaa session-id common	
Step 9	end	Exits global configuration mode, and returns to privileged
	Example:	EXEC mode.
	Device(config)# end	

Configuring the VRF

SUMMARY STEPS

- 1. enable
- 2. configure terminal
- 3. ip vrf vrf-name
- **4.** rd route-distinguisher

L

- **5.** route-target export *route-target-ext-community*
- 6. route-target import route-target-ext-community
- **7**. end

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.
	Example:	
	Device> enable	
Step 2	configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
	Example:	
	Device# configure terminal	
Step 3	ip vrf vrf-name	Defines the VRF instance and enters VRF configuration
	Example:	mode.
	Device(config)# ip vrf VRF-100-1	
Step 4	rd route-distinguisher	Creates routing and forwarding tables for a VRF.
	Example:	
	Device(config-vrf)# rd 100:21	
Step 5	route-target export route-target-ext-community	(Optional) Creates a route-target export extended
	Example:	community for a VRF.
	<pre>Device(config-vrf)# route-target export 101:1</pre>	
Step 6	route-target import route-target-ext-community	(Optional) Creates a route-target import extended
	Example:	community for a VRF.
	<pre>Device(config-vrf)# route-target import 101:1</pre>	
Step 7	end	Exits VRF configuration mode, and returns to privileged
	Example:	EXEC mode.
	Device(config)# end	
	1	1

Configuring Internet Key Exchange Version 2 (IKEv2)

Configuring IKEv2 Proposal

Refer to the "IKEv2 Smart Defaults" section for information on the default IKEv2 proposal.

Perform this task to override the default IKEv2 proposal or to manually configure the proposals if you do not want to use the default proposal.

An IKEv2 proposal is a set of transforms used in the negotiation of IKEv2 SA as part of the IKE_SA_INIT exchange. An IKEv2 proposal is regarded as complete only when it has at least an encryption algorithm, an integrity algorithm, and a Diffie-Hellman (DH) group configured. If no proposal is configured and attached to an IKEv2 policy, the default proposal in the default IKEv2 policy is used in negotiation.



Note

Security threats, as well as the cryptographic technologies to help protect against them, are constantly changing. For more information about the latest Cisco cryptographic recommendations, see the Next Generation Encryption (NGE) white paper.

Although the IKEv2 proposal is similar to the **crypto isakmp policy** command, the IKEv2 proposal differs as follows:

- An IKEv2 proposal allows configuring one or more transforms for each transform type.
- An IKEv2 proposal does not have any associated priority.

SUMMARY STEPS

- 1. enable
- 2. configure terminal
- 3. crypto ikev2 proposal name
- 4. encryption encryption-type...
- **5.** integrity integrity-type...
- 6. group group-type...
- 7. prf prf-algorithm
- 8. end
- 9. show crypto ikev2 proposal [name | default]

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.
	Example:	• Enter your password if prompted.
	Device> enable	
Step 2	configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
	Example:	
	Device# configure terminal	
Step 3	crypto ikev2 proposal name	Overrides the default IKEv2 proposal, defines an IKEv2
	Example:	proposal name, and enters IKEv2 proposal configuration
	<pre>Device(config)# crypto ikev2 proposal proposal1</pre>	
Step 4	encryption encryption-type	Specifies one or more transforms of the encryption type,
	Example:	which are as follows:
	<pre>Device(config-ikev2-proposal)# encryption aes-cbc-128 aes-cbc-192</pre>	• 3des (No longer recommended)
		• aes-cbc-128
		• aes-cbc-192
		• aes-cbc-256
	1	

	Command or Action	Purpose
		• aes-gcm-128 • aes-gcm-256
Step 5	<pre>integrity integrity-type Example: Device(config-ikev2-proposal)# integrity sha1</pre>	 Specifies one or more transforms of the integrity algorithm type, which are as follows: The md5 keyword specifies MD5 (HMAC variant) as the hash algorithm. (No longer recommended) The sha1 keyword specifies SHA-1 (HMAC variant) as the hash algorithm. The sha256 keyword specifies SHA-2 family 256-bit (HMAC variant) as the hash algorithm. The sha384 keyword specifies SHA-2 family 384-bit (HMAC variant) as the hash algorithm. The sha512 keyword specifies SHA-2 family 512-bit (HMAC variant) as the hash algorithm. Note An integrity algorithm type cannot be specified if you specify Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) in Galois/Counter Mode (AES GCM) as
Step 6	group group-type Example:	the encryption type. Specifies the Diffie-Hellman (DH) group identifier. • The default DH group identifiers are group 2 and 5 in
	Device(config-ikev2-proposal)# group 14	 the IKEv2 proposal. 1—768-bit DH (No longer recommended). 2—1024-bit DH (No longer recommended). 5—1536-bit DH (No longer recommended). 14—Specifies the 2048-bit DH group. 15—Specifies the 3072-bit DH group. 16—Specifies the 4096-bit DH group. 19—Specifies the 256-bit elliptic curve DH (ECDH) group. 20—Specifies the 384-bit ECDH group. 24—Specifies the 2048-bit DH group.
		The group chosen must be strong enough (have enough bits) to protect the IPsec keys during negotiation. A generally accepted guideline recommends the use of a 2048-bit group after 2013 (until 2030). Either group 14 or group 24 can be selected to meet this guideline. Even if a longer-lived security method is needed, the use of Elliptic Curve Cryptography is recommended, but group 15 and group 16 can also be considered.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 7	<pre>prf prf-algorithm Example: Device(config-ikev2-proposal)# prf sha256 sha512</pre>	Specifies one or more of the Pseudo-Random Function (PRF) algorithm, which are as follows: • md5 • sha1 • sha256 • sha384 • sha512 Note This step is mandatory if the encryption type is AES-GCM—aes-gmc-128 or aes-gmc-256. If the encryption algorithm is not AES-GCM, the PRF algorithm is the same as the specified integrity algorithm. However, you can specify a PRF algorithm, if required.
Step 8	<pre>end Example: Device(config-ikev2-proposal)# end</pre>	Exits IKEv2 proposal configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 9	<pre>show crypto ikev2 proposal [name default] Example: Device# show crypto ikev2 proposal default</pre>	(Optional) Displays the IKEv2 proposal.

Configuring IKEv2 Policies

See the "IKEv2 Smart Defaults" section for information about the default IKEv2 policy.

Perform this task to override the default IKEv2 policy or to manually configure the policies if you do not want to use the default policy.

An IKEv2 policy must contain at least one proposal to be considered as complete and can have match statements, which are used as selection criteria to select a policy for negotiation. During the initial exchange, the local address (IPv4 or IPv6) and the Front Door VRF (FVRF) of the negotiating SA are matched with the policy and the proposal is selected.

The following rules apply to the match statements:

- An IKEv2 policy without any match statements will match all peers in the global FVRF.
- An IKEv2 policy can have only one match FVRF statement.
- An IKEv2 policy can have one or more match address local statements.
- When a policy is selected, multiple match statements of the same type are logically ORed and match statements of different types are logically ANDed.
- There is no precedence between match statements of different types.
- Configuration of overlapping policies is considered a misconfiguration. In the case of multiple, possible
 policy matches, the first policy is selected.

SUMMARY STEPS

- 1. enable
- **2**. configure terminal
- 3. crypto ikev2 policy name
- 4. proposal name
- 5. match fvrf {*fvrf-name* | any}
- 6. match address local {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address*}
- 7. end
- 8. show crypto ikev2 policy [policy-name | default]

	Command or Action	Purpose	
Step 1	enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.	
	Example:	• Enter your password if prompted.	
	Device> enable		
Step 2	configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.	
	Example:		
	Device# configure terminal		
Step 3	crypto ikev2 policy name	Overrides the default IKEv2 policy, defines an IKEv2 policy	
	Example:	name, and enters IKEv2 policy configuration mode.	
	<pre>Device(config)# crypto ikev2 policy policy1</pre>		
Step 4	proposal name	Specifies the proposals that must be used with the policy.	
	Example:	• The proposals are prioritized in the order of listing.	
	Device(config-ikev2-policy)# proposal proposal1	Note You must specify at least one proposal. You can specify additional proposals with each proposal in a separate statement.	
Step 5	match fvrf { <i>fvrf-name</i> any} Example:	(Optional) Matches the policy based on a user-configured FVRF or any FVRF.	
	Device(config-ikev2-policy)# match fvrf any	• The default is global FVRF.	
		Note The match fvrf any command must be explicitly configured in order to match any VRF. The FVRF specifies the VRF in which the IKEv2 packets are negotiated.	
Step 6	match address local {ipv4-address ipv6-address} Example:	(Optional) Matches the policy based on the local IPv4 or IPv6 address.	
	Device(config-ikev2-policy)# match address local 10.0.0.1	• The default matches all the addresses in the configured FVRF.	

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 7	end	Exits IKEv2 policy configuration mode and returns to
	Example:	privileged EXEC mode.
	Device(config-ikev2-policy)# end	
Step 8	show crypto ikev2 policy [policy-name default]	(Optional) Displays the IKEv2 policy.
	Example:	
	Device# show crypto ikev2 policy policy1	

Configuring the IKEv2 Keyring

Perform this task to configure the IKEv2 key ring if the local or remote authentication method is a preshared key.

IKEv2 key ring keys must be configured in the peer configuration submode that defines a peer subblock. An IKEv2 key ring can have multiple peer subblocks. A peer subblock contains a single symmetric or asymmetric key pair for a peer or peer group identified by any combination of the hostname, identity, and IP address.

IKEv2 key rings are independent of IKEv1 key rings. The key differences are as follows:

- IKEv2 key rings support symmetric and asymmetric preshared keys.
- IKEv2 key rings do not support Rivest, Shamir, and Adleman (RSA) public keys.
- IKEv2 key rings are specified in the IKEv2 profile and are not looked up, unlike IKEv1, where keys are looked up on receipt of MM1 to negotiate the preshared key authentication method. The authentication method is not negotiated in IKEv2.
- IKEv2 key rings are not associated with VPN routing and forwarding (VRF) during configuration. The VRF of an IKEv2 key ring is the VRF of the IKEv2 profile that refers to the key ring.
- A single key ring can be specified in an IKEv2 profile, unlike an IKEv1 profile, which can specify multiple key rings.
- A single key ring can be specified in more than one IKEv2 profile, if the same keys are shared across peers matching different profiles.
- An IKEv2 key ring is structured as one or more peer subblocks.

On an IKEv2 initiator, the IKEv2 key ring key lookup is performed using the peer's hostname or the address, in that order. On an IKEv2 responder, the key lookup is performed using the peer's IKEv2 identity or the address, in that order.

Note

You cannot configure the same identity in more than one peer.

SUMMARY STEPS

- 1. enable
- 2. configure terminal
- 3. crypto ikev2 keyring keyring-name
- 4. peer name

- 5. description line-of-description
- 6. hostname *name*
- **7.** address {*ipv4-address* [*mask*] | *ipv6-address* prefix}
- 8. identity {address {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address*} | fqdn domain *domain-name* | email domain *domain-name* | key-id}
- 9. pre-shared-key {local | remote} [0 | 6] line hex hexadecimal-string
- 10. end

	Command or Action	Purpose		
Step 1	enable	Enables	s privileged EXEC mode.	
	Example:	• En	ter your password if prompted.	
	Device> enable			
Step 2	configure terminal	Enters g	global configuration mode.	
	Example:			
	Device# configure terminal			
Step 3	crypto ikev2 keyring keyring-name	Defines an IKEv2 key ring and enters IKEv2 key ring configuration mode.		
	Example:			
	<pre>Device(config)# crypto ikev2 keyring kyrl</pre>			
Step 4	peer name	Defines the peer or peer group and enters IKEv2 key ring		
	Example:	peer configuration mode.		
	<pre>Device(config-ikev2-keyring)# peer peer1</pre>			
Step 5	description line-of-description	(Optional) Describes the peer or peer group.		
	Example:			
	<pre>Device(config-ikev2-keyring-peer)# description this is the first peer</pre>			
Step 6	hostname name	Specifies the peer using a hostname.		
	Example:			
	<pre>Device(config-ikev2-keyring-peer)# hostname host1</pre>			
Step 7	address {ipv4-address [mask] ipv6-address prefix}	Specifie	es an IPv4 or IPv6 address or range for the peer.	
	Example:	Note	This IP address is the IKE endpoint address and is independent of the identity address.	
	<pre>Device(config-ikev2-keyring-peer)# address 10.0.0.1 255.255.255.0</pre>			
Step 8	identity {address {ipv4-address ipv6-address} fqdn	Identifies the IKEv2 peer through the following identities:		
	domain domain-name email domain domain-name key-id key-id}	• E-mail		
	Example:	• Fu	lly qualified domain name (FQDN)	
	<pre>Device(config-ikev2-keyring-peer)# identity address 10.0.0.5</pre>	• IPv	v4 or IPv6 address	

	Command or Action	Purpose	
		Key ID Note The identity is available for key lookup on the IKEy2 responder only	
Step 9	pre-shared-key {local remote} [0 6] line hex hexadecimal-string	Specifies the preshared key for the peer.	
	<pre>Example: Device(config-ikev2-keyring-peer)# pre-shared-key local key1</pre>	y y	
Step 10	<pre>end Example: Device(config-ikev2-keyring-peer)# end</pre>	Exits IKEv2 key ring peer configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.	

Configuring an IKEv2 Profile (Basic)

Perform this task to configure the mandatory commands for an IKEv2 profile.

An IKEv2 profile is a repository of nonnegotiable parameters of the IKE security association (SA) (such as local or remote identities and authentication methods) and services available to authenticated peers that match the profile. An IKEv2 profile must be configured and associated with either a crypto map or an IPsec profile on the IKEv2 initiator. Use the **set ikev2-profile** *profile-name* command to associate a profile with a crypto map or an IPsec profile. To disassociate the profile, use the **no** form of the command.

The following rules apply to match statements:

- An IKEv2 profile must contain a match identity or a match certificate statement; otherwise, the profile is considered incomplete and is not used. An IKEv2 profile can have more than one match identity or match certificate statements.
- An IKEv2 profile must have a single match Front Door VPN routing and forwarding (FVRF) statement.
- When a profile is selected, multiple match statements of the same type are logically ORed, and multiple match statements of different types are logically ANDed.
- The match identity and match certificate statements are considered to be the same type of statements and are ORed.
- Configuration of overlapping profiles is considered a misconfiguration. In the case of multiple profile matches, no profile is selected.

Use the **show crypto ikev2 profile** *profile-name* command to display the IKEv2 profile.

SUMMARY STEPS

- 1. enable
- **2**. configure terminal
- 3. crypto ikev2 profile profile-name
- 4. description line-of-description
- 5. aaa accounting {psk | cert | eap} list-name

- 6. authentication {local {rsa-sig | pre-share [key {0 | 6} password}] | ecdsa-sig | eap [gtc | md5 | ms-chapv2] [username username] [password {0 | 6} password}]} | remote {eap [query-identity | timeout seconds] | rsa-sig | pre-share [key {0 | 6} password}] | ecdsa-sig}}
- 7. dpd interval retry-interval {on-demand | periodic}
- 8. identity local {address {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address*} | dn | email *email-string* | fqdn *fqdn-string* | key-id *opaque-string*}
- **9**. initial-contact force
- **10.** ivrf name
- **11.** keyring {local keyring-name | aaa list-name [name-mangler mangler-name | password password] }
- 12. lifetime seconds
- **13.** match {address local {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | interface *name*} | certificate *certificate-map* | fvrf {*fvrf-name* | any} | identity remote address {*ipv4-address* [*mask*] | *ipv6-address* prefix} | {email [*domain string*] | fqdn [*domain string*]} string | key-id opaque-string}
- 14. nat keepalive seconds
- **15.** pki trustpoint trustpoint-label [sign | verify]
- 16. redirect gateway auth
- **17.** virtual-template number mode auto
- 18. shutdown
- 19. end

	Command or Action	Purpose	
Step 1	enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.	
	Example:	• Enter your password if prompted.	
	Device> enable		
Step 2	configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.	
	Example:		
	Device# configure terminal		
Step 3	crypto ikev2 profile profile-name	Defines an IKEv2 profile and enters IKEv2 profile	
	Example:	configuration mode.	
	<pre>Device(config)# crypto ikev2 profile profile1</pre>		
Step 4	description line-of-description	(Optional) Describes the profile.	
	Example:		
	<pre>Device(config-ikev2-profile)# description This is an IKEv2 profile</pre>		
Step 5	aaa accounting {psk cert eap} list-name	(Optional) Enables authentication, authorization, and	
	Example:	accounting (AAA) accounting method lists for IPsec	
	<pre>Device(config-ikev2-profile)# aaa accounting eap list1</pre>		

I

	Command or Action	Purpose	
		Note	If the psk , cert , or eap keyword is not specified, the AAA accounting method list is used irrespective of the peer authentication method.
Step 6	<pre>authentication {local {rsa-sig pre-share [key {0 6} password}] ecdsa-sig eap [gtc md5 ms-chapv2] [username username] [password {0 6} password}]] remote {eap [query-identity timeout seconds] rsa-sig pre-share [key {0 6} password}] ecdsa-sig}} Example: Device (config-ikev2-profile) # authentication local ecdsa-sig</pre>	Specifies • rsa- meti • pre- auth • ecds auth • eap meti • que peer • time to w the : Note	 as the local or remote authentication method. asig—Specifies RSA-sig as the authentication hod. ashare—Specifies the preshared key as the nentication method. asa-sig—Specifies ECDSA-sig as the nentication method. —Specifies EAP as the remote authentication hod. ary-identity—Queries the EAP identity from the tr. cout seconds—Specifies the duration, in seconds, vait for the next IKE_AUTH request after sending first IKE_AUTH response. You can specify only one local authentication methods.
Step 7	<pre>dpd interval retry-interval {on-demand periodic} Example: Device(config-ikev2-profile)# dpd 30 6 on-demand</pre>	(Optional for peers • Dea Note	I) Configures Dead Peer Detection (DPD) globally matching the profile. d Peer Detection (DPD) is disabled by default. In the example in this step, the first DPD is sent after 30 seconds when there is no incoming ESP traffic. After waiting for 6 seconds (which is the specified retry interval), DPD retries are sent agressively 5 times in intervals of 6 seconds each. So, a total of 66 seconds ($30 + 6 + 6 * 5 = 66$) elapses before a crypto session is torn down because of DPD.
Step 8	<pre>identity local {address {ipv4-address ipv6-address} dn email email-string fqdn fqdn-string key-id opaque-string} Example: Device (config-ikev2-profile) # identity local email abc@example.com</pre>	(Optiona Note	 Specifies the local IKEv2 identity type. If the local authentication method is a preshared key, the default local identity is the IP address. If the local authentication method is a Rivest, Shamir, and Adleman (RSA) signature, the default local identity is a Distinguished Name.

	Command or Action	Purpose Enforces initial contact processing if the initial contact notification is not received in the IKE_AUTH exchange.	
Step 9	<pre>initial-contact force Example: Device(config-ikev2-profile)# initial-contact force</pre>		
Step 10	<pre>ivrf name Example: Device(config-ikev2-profile)# ivrf vrf1</pre>	 (Optional) Specifies a user-defined VPN routing and forwarding (VRF) or global VRF if the IKEv2 profile i attached to a crypto map. If the IKEv2 profile is used for tunnel protection, t Inside VRF (IVRF) for the tunnel interface should configured on the tunnel interface 	
		Note	IVRF specifies the VRF for cleartext packets. The default value for IVRF is FVRF.
Step 11	keyring {local keyring-name aaa list-name [name-mangler mangler-name password password] }	Specifies the local or AAA-based key ring that mu used with the local and remote preshared key authent method.	
	<pre>Example: Device(config-ikev2-profile)# keyring aaa keyring1 name-mangler mangler1</pre>	Note	You can specify only one key ring. Local AAA is not supported for AAA-based preshared keys.
		Note	Depending on your release, the local keyword and the name-mangler <i>mangler-name</i> keyword-argument pair should be used.
		Note	When using AAA, the default password for a Radius access request is "cisco". You can use the password keyword within the keyring command to change the password.
Step 12	lifetime seconds	Specifie	s the lifetime, in seconds, for the IKEv2 SA.
	<pre>Example: Device(config-ikev2-profile)# lifetime 1000</pre>		
Step 13	match {address local {ipv4-address ipv6-address interface name} certificate certificate-map fvrf{fvrf-name any} identity remote address{ipv4-address [mask] ipv6-address prefix} {email[domain string] fqdn [domain string]} string key-idopaque-string}	Uses match statements to select an IKEv2 profile for a peer.	
	<pre>Example: Device(config-ikev2-profile)# match address local interface Ethernet 2/0</pre>		
Step 14	<pre>nat keepalive seconds Example: Device(config-ikev2-profile)# nat keepalive 500</pre>	(Optiona duration • NA	I) Enables NAT keepalive and specifies the in seconds.T is disabled by default.

	Command or Action	Purpose	
Step 15	pki trustpoint trustpoint-label [sign verify]	Specifies use with	s Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) trustpoints for the RSA signature authentication method.
	Device(config-ikev2-profile)# pki trustpoint tsp1 sign	Note	If the sign or verify keyword is not specified, the trustpoint is used for signing and verification.
		Note	In contrast to IKEv1, a trustpoint must be configured in an IKEv2 profile for certificate-based authentication to succeed. There is no fallback for globally configured trustpoints if this command is not present in the configuration. The trustpoint configuration applies to the IKEv2 initiator and responder.
Step 16	redirect gateway auth	Enables the redirect mechanism on the gateway on S authentication.	
	Example: Device(config-ikev2-profile)# redirect gateway auth	Note	The redirect mechanism is specific to the IKEv2 profiles.
Step 17	virtual-template <i>number</i> mode auto	 (Optional) Specifies the virtual template for clonin virtual access interface (VAI). mode auto—Enables the tunnel mode auto se feature. 	
	Device(config-ikev2-profile)# virtual-template 1 mode auto		
		Note	For the IPsec Dynamic Virtual Tunnel Interface (DVTI), a virtual template must be specified in an IKEv2 profile, without which an IKEv2 session is not initiated.
Step 18	shutdown	(Optiona	l) Shuts down the IKEv2 profile.
	Example:		
	<pre>Device(config-ikev2-profile)# shutdown</pre>		
Step 19	end	Exits IK	Ev2 profile configuration mode and returns to
	Example:	privilege	ed EXEC mode.
	<pre>Device(config-ikev2-profile)# end</pre>		

Configuring IPsec Mixed Mode Support for SVTIs

SUMMARY STEPS

- 1. enable
- 2. configure terminal
- **3.** crypto IPsec profile profile-name
- 4. set transform-set transform-set-name [transform-set-name2...transform-set-name6]
- 5. exit
- **6. interface** *type number*
- 7. ip address address mask
- **8.** Do one of the following:
 - tunnel mode ipsec ipv4 v6-overlay
 - tunnel mode ipsec ipv6 v4-overlay
- **9.** tunnel source *interface-type interface-type*
- **10.** tunnel destination *ip-address*
- **11.** tunnel protection IPsec profile profile-name
- 12. end

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.
	Example:	• Enter your password if prompted.
	Device> enable	
Step 2	configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
	Example:	
	Device# configure terminal	
Step 3	crypto IPsec profile profile-name	Defines the IPsec parameters that are to be used for IPsec
	Example:	profile configuration mode.
	Device(config)# crypto IPsec profile PROF	
Step 4	set transform-set transform-set-name	Specifies which transform sets can be used with the crypto
	[transform-set-name2transform-set-name0]	map entry.
	Example:	
	<pre>Device(ipsec-profile)# set transform-set tset</pre>	
Step 5	exit	Exits IPsec profile configuration mode, and enters global
	Example:	configuration mode.
	Device(ipsec-profile)# exit	
Step 6	interface type number	Specifies the interface on which the tunnel will be
	Example:	configured and enters interface configuration mode.
	Device(config)# interface tunnel 0	
Step 7	ip address address mask	Specifies the IP address and mask.
	Example:	

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-if)# ip address 10.1.1.1 255.255.255.0	
Step 8	Do one of the following:	Defines the mode for the tunnel.
	 tunnel mode ipsec ipv4 v6-overlay tunnel mode ipsec ipv6 v4-overlay 	
	Example:	
	Device(config-if)# tunnel mode ipsec ipv4 v6-overlay	
Step 9	tunnel source interface-type interface-type	Specifies the tunnel source as a loopback interface.
	Example:	
	Device(config-if)# tunnel source loopback 0	
Step 10	tunnel destination <i>ip-address</i>	Identifies the IP address of the tunnel destination.
	Example:	
	Device(config-if)# tunnel destination 172.16.1.1	
Step 11	tunnel protection IPsec profile profile-name	Associates a tunnel interface with an IPsec profile.
	Example:	
	Device(config-if)# tunnel protection IPsec profile PROF	
Step 12	end	Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged
	Example:	EXEC mode.
	Device(config-if)# end	

Configuring IPsec Mixed Mode Support for Dynamic VTIs

SUMMARY STEPS

- 1. enable
- 2. configure terminal
- 3. crypto ipsec profile profile-name
- 4. set mixed mode
- 5. set transform-set transform-set-name [transform-set-name2...transform-set-name6]
- 6. exit
- 7. interface virtual-template *number* type tunnel
- 8. tunnel mode ipsec ipv4
- 9. tunnel protection IPsec profile profile-name
- **10**. exit
- **11. crypto isakamp profile** *profile-name*

- **12.** match identity address *ip-address mask*
- **13.** virtual template template-number
- 14. end

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.
	Example:	• Enter your password if prompted.
	Device> enable	
Step 2	configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
	Example:	
	Device# configure terminal	
Step 3	crypto ipsec profile profile-name	Defines the IPsec parameters that are to be used for IPsec
	Example:	encryption between two IPsec devices and enters IPsec profile configuration mode
	<pre>Device(config)# crypto ipsec profile PROF</pre>	
Step 4	set mixed mode	Defines the IPsec parameters that are to be used for IPsec
	Example:	encryption between two IPsec devices and enters IPsec profile configuration mode
	Device(config)# set mixed mode	
Step 5	set transform-set transform-set-name [transform-set-name2transform-set-name6]	Specifies which transform sets can be used with the crypto map entry.
	Example:	
	Device(ipsec-profile)# set transform-set tset	
Step 6	exit	Exits ipsec profile configuration mode and enters global
	Example:	configuration mode.
	<pre>Device(ipsec-profile) # exit</pre>	
Step 7	interface virtual-template number type tunnel	Defines a virtual-template tunnel interface and enters
	Example:	interface configuration mode.
	<pre>Device(config)# interface virtual-template 2 type tunnel</pre>	
Step 8	tunnel mode ipsec ipv4	Defines the mode for the tunnel.
	Example:	
	<pre>Device(config-if)# tunnel mode ipsec ipv4</pre>	
Step 9	tunnel protection IPsec profile profile-name	Associates a tunnel interface with an IPsec profile.
	Example:	
	Device(config-if)# tunnel protection ipsec profile PROF	

	Command or Action	Purpose	
Step 10	exit	Exits interface configuration mode.	
	Example:		
	<pre>Device(config-if)# exit</pre>		
Step 11	crypto isakamp profile profile-name	Defines the ISAKMP profile to be used for the virtual	
	Example:	template.	
	Device(config) # crypto isakamp profile profile1		
Step 12	match identity address ip-address mask	Matches an identity from the ISAKMP profile and enters	
	Example:	isakmp-profile configuration mode.	
	Device(conf-isa-prof)# match identity address 10.1.1.0 255.255.255.0		
Step 13	virtual template template-number	Specifies the virtual template attached to the ISAKMP	
	Example:	profile.	
	<pre>Device(config) # virtual-template 1</pre>		
Step 14	end	Exits global configuration mode and enters privileged	
	Example:	EXEC mode.	
	Device(config)# end		

Configuration Examples for IPsec Virtual Tunnel Interfaces

Example: Static Virtual Tunnel Interface with IPsec

The following example configuration uses a preshared key for authentication between peers. VPN traffic is forwarded to the IPsec VTI for encryption and then sent out the physical interface. The tunnel on subnet 10 checks packets for the IPsec policy and passes them to the Crypto Engine (CE) for IPsec encapsulation. The figure below illustrates the IPsec VTI configuration.

Figure 6: VTI with IPsec

Router Configuration

```
version 12.3
service timestamps debug datetime
service timestamps log datetime
hostname 7200-3
no aaa new-model
ip subnet-zero
ip cef
controller ISA 6/1
!
crypto isakmp policy 1
encr aes
authentication pre-share
group 14
```

L

```
crypto isakmp key Cisco12345 address 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
crypto ipsec transform-set T1 esp-aes esp-sha-hmac
crypto ipsec profile P1
set transform-set T1
interface Tunnel0
ip address 10.0.51.203 255.255.255.0
load-interval 30
tunnel source 10.0.149.203
 tunnel destination 10.0.149.217
tunnel mode IPsec ipv4
tunnel protection IPsec profile P1
!
ip address 10.0.149.203 255.255.255.0
duplex full
1
 ip address 10.0.35.203 255.255.255.0
duplex full
1
ip classless
ip route 10.0.36.0 255.255.255.0 Tunnel0
line con 0
line aux 0
line vty 0 4
end
```

Router Configuration

```
version 12.3
hostname c1750-17
no aaa new-model
ip subnet-zero
ip cef
crypto isakmp policy 1
encr aes
authentication pre-share
group 14
crypto isakmp key Cisco12345 address 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
crypto ipsec transform-set T1 esp-aes esp-sha-hmac
crypto ipsec profile P1
set transform-set T1
interface Tunnel0
ip address 10.0.51.217 255.255.255.0
tunnel source 10.0.149.217
 tunnel destination 10.0.149.203
 tunnel mode ipsec ipv4
tunnel protection ipsec profile P1
interface
ip address 10.0.149.217 255.255.255.0
speed 100
full-duplex
1
interface
ip address 10.0.36.217 255.255.255.0
load-interval 30
full-duplex
Т
```

```
ip classless
ip route 10.0.35.0 255.255.255.0 Tunnel0
line con 0
line aux 0
line vty 0 4
end
```

Example: Verifying the Results for the IPsec Static Virtual Tunnel Interface

This section provides information that you can use to confirm that your configuration is working properly. In this display, Tunnel 0 is "up," and the line protocol is "up." If the line protocol is "down," the session is not active.

Verifying the IPsec Static Virtual Tunnel Interface

Router# show interface tunnel 0 Tunnel0 is up, line protocol is up Hardware is Tunnel Internet address is 10.0.51.203/24 MTU 1514 bytes, BW 9 Kbit, DLY 500000 usec, reliability 255/255, txload 103/255, rxload 110/255 Encapsulation TUNNEL, loopback not set Keepalive not set Tunnel source 10.0.149.203, destination 10.0.149.217 Tunnel protocol/transport ipsec/ip, key disabled, sequencing disabled Tunnel TTL 255 Checksumming of packets disabled, fast tunneling enabled Tunnel transmit bandwidth 8000 (kbps) Tunnel receive bandwidth 8000 (kbps) Tunnel protection via IPsec (profile "P1") Last input never, output never, output hang never Last clearing of "show interface" counters never Input queue: 1/75/0/0 (size/max/drops/flushes); Total output drops: 0 Queueing strategy: fifo Output queue: 0/0 (size/max) 30 second input rate 13000 bits/sec, 34 packets/sec 30 second output rate 36000 bits/sec, 34 packets/sec 191320 packets input, 30129126 bytes, 0 no buffer Received 0 broadcasts, 0 runts, 0 giants, 0 throttles 0 input errors, 0 CRC, 0 frame, 0 overrun, 0 ignored, 0 abort 59968 packets output, 15369696 bytes, 0 underruns 0 output errors, 0 collisions, 0 interface resets 0 output buffer failures, 0 output buffers swapped out

Router# show crypto session

Crypto session current status Interface: Tunnel0 Session status: UP-ACTIVE Peer: 10.0.149.217 port 500 IKE SA: local 10.0.149.203/500 remote 10.0.149.217/500 Active IPsec FLOW: permit ip 0.0.0.0/0.0.0 0.0.0.0/0.0.0 Active SAs: 4, Router# show ip route

Codes: C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, M - mobile, B - BGP D - EIGRP, EX - EIGRP external, O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2 E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2 i - IS-IS, su - IS-IS summary, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2

```
ia - IS-IS inter area, * - candidate default, U - per-user static route
o - ODR, P - periodic downloaded static route
Gateway of last resort is not set
10.0.0.0/8 is variably subnetted, 4 subnets, 2 masks
C 10.0.35.0/24 is directly connected, Ethernet3/3
S 10.0.36.0/24 is directly connected, Tunnel0
C 10.0.51.0/24 is directly connected, Tunnel0
C 10.0.149.0/24 is directly connected, Ethernet3/0
```

Example: VRF-Aware Static Virtual Tunnel Interface

To add the VRF to the static VTI example, include the **ipvrf** and **ip vrf forwarding** commands to the configuration as shown in the following example.

Cisco 7206 Router Configuration

```
hostname cisco 7206
.
.
ip vrf sample-vtil
rd 1:1
route-target export 1:1
route-target import 1:1
!
.
interface Tunnel0
ip vrf forwarding sample-vti1
ip address 10.0.51.217 255.255.255.0
tunnel source 10.0.149.217
tunnel destination 10.0.149.203
tunnel mode ipsec ipv4
tunnel protection ipsec profile P1
.
.
!
end
```

Example: Static Virtual Tunnel Interface with QoS

You can apply any QoS policy to the tunnel endpoint by including the **service-policy** statement under the tunnel interface. The following example shows how to police traffic out the tunnel interface.

Cisco 7206 Router Configuration

```
hostname cisco 7206
.
.
class-map match-all VTI
match any
!
policy-map VTI
class VTI
police cir 2000000
conform-action transmit
exceed-action drop
!
```

```
.
interface Tunnel0
ip address 10.0.51.217 255.255.255.0
tunnel source 10.0.149.217
tunnel destination 10.0.149.203
tunnel mode ipsec ipv4
tunnel protection ipsec profile P1
service-policy output VTI
!
.
.
end
```

Example: Static Virtual Tunnel Interface with Virtual Firewall

Applying the virtual firewall to the SVTI tunnel allows traffic from the spoke to pass through the hub to reach the Internet. The figure below illustrates an SVTI with the spoke protected inherently by the corporate firewall.





The basic SVTI configuration has been modified to include the virtual firewall definition:

Cisco 7206 Router Configuration

```
hostname cisco 7206
.
.
ip inspect max-incomplete high 1000000
ip inspect max-incomplete low 800000
ip inspect one-minute high 1000000
ip inspect one-minute low 800000
ip inspect tcp synwait-time 60
ip inspect tcp max-incomplete host 100000 block-time 2
ip inspect name IOSFW1 tcp timeout 300
ip inspect name IOSFW1 udp
!
.
.
interface GigabitEthernet0/1
description Internet Connection
ip address 172.18.143.246 255.255.255.0
```

```
ip access-group 100 in
ip nat outside
1
interface Tunnel0
ip address 10.0.51.217 255.255.255.0
ip nat inside
ip inspect IOSFW1 in
tunnel source 10.0.149.217
 tunnel destination 10.0.149.203
tunnel mode ipsec ipv4
tunnel protection ipsec profile P1
ip classless
ip route 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 172.18.143.1
1
ip nat translation timeout 120
ip nat translation finrst-timeout 2
ip nat translation max-entries 300000
ip nat pool test1 10.2.100.1 10.2.100.50 netmask 255.255.255.0
ip nat inside source list 110 pool test1 vrf test-vti1 overload
1
access-list 100 permit esp any any
access-list 100 permit udp any eq isakmp any
access-list 100 permit udp any eq non500-isakmp any
access-list 100 permit icmp any any
access-list 110 deny esp any any
access-list 110 deny udp any eq isakmp any
access-list 110 permit ip any any
access-list 110 deny udp any eq non500-isakmp any
end
```

Example: Dynamic Virtual Tunnel Interface Easy VPN Server

The following example illustrates the use of the DVTI Easy VPN server, which serves as an IPsec remote access aggregator. The client can be a home user running a Cisco VPN client or a Cisco IOS router configured as an Easy VPN client.

Cisco 7206 Router Configuration

```
hostname cisco 7206
1
aaa new-model
aaa authentication login local list local
aaa authorization network local list local
aaa session-id common
ip subnet-zero
ip cef
1
username cisco password 0 cisco123
1
controller ISA 1/1
crypto isakmp policy 1
encr aes
authentication pre-share
group 14
1
crypto isakmp client configuration group group1
key cisco123
```

```
pool group1pool
save-password
crypto isakmp profile vpn1-ra
   match identity group group1
   client authentication list local list
   isakmp authorization list local list
   client configuration address respond
   virtual-template 1
T
crypto ipsec transform-set VTI-TS esp-aes esp-sha-hmac
crypto ipsec profile test-vtil
set transform-set VTI-TS
T.
interface GigabitEthernet0/1
description Internet Connection
ip address 172.18.143.246 255.255.255.0
interface GigabitEthernet0/2
description Internal Network
ip address 10.2.1.1 255.255.255.0
interface Virtual-Template1 type tunnel
ip unnumbered GigabitEthernet0/1
ip virtual-reassembly
tunnel mode ipsec ipv4
tunnel protection ipsec profile test-vtil
ip local pool group1pool 192.168.1.1 192.168.1.4
ip classless
ip route 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 172.18.143.1
1
end
```

Example: Verifying the Results for the Dynamic Virtual Tunnel Interface Easy VPN Server

The following examples show that a DVTI has been configured for an Easy VPN server.

```
Router# show running-config interface Virtual-Access2
Building configuration ...
Current configuration : 250 bytes
interface Virtual-Access2
ip unnumbered GigabitEthernet0/1
ip virtual-reassembly
tunnel source 172.18.143.246
 tunnel destination 172.18.143.208
tunnel mode ipsec ipv4
tunnel protection ipsec profile test-vtil
no tunnel protection ipsec initiate
end
Router# show ip route
Codes: C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, M - mobile, B - BGP
       D - EIGRP, EX - EIGRP external, O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       \rm N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, \rm N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, su - IS-IS summary, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2
       ia - IS-IS inter area, * - candidate default, U - per-user static route
       o - ODR, P - periodic downloaded static route
Gateway of last resort is 10.2.1.10 to network 0.0.0.0
```

Example: Dynamic Virtual Tunnel Interface Easy VPN Client

The following example shows how you can set up a router as the Easy VPN client. This example uses the same idea as the Easy VPN client that you can run from a PC to connect to a network. The configuration of the Easy VPN server will work for the software client or the Cisco IOS client.

```
hostname cisco 1841
1
no aaa new-model
1
ip cef
1
username cisco password 0 cisco123
1
crypto ipsec client ezypn CLIENT
connect manual
 group group1 key cisco123
mode client
peer 172.18.143.246
virtual-interface 1
username cisco password cisco123
 xauth userid mode local
1
interface Loopback0
ip address 10.1.1.1 255.255.255.255
interface FastEthernet0/0
 description Internet Connection
ip address 172.18.143.208 255.255.255.0
 crypto ipsec client ezvpn CLIENT
1
interface FastEthernet0/1
 ip address 10.1.1.252 255.255.255.0
 crypto ipsec client ezvpn CLIENT inside
!
interface Virtual-Template1 type tunnel
ip unnumbered Loopback0
ip route 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 172.18.143.1 254
1
end
```

The client definition can be set up in many different ways. The mode specified with the **connect** command can be automatic or manual. If the connect mode is set to manual, the IPsec tunnel has to be initiated manually by a user.

Note the use of the **mode** command. The mode can be a client, network-extension, or network-extension-plus. This example indicates the client mode, which means that the client is given a private address from the server. The network-extension mode is different from the client mode in that the client specifies for the server its attached private subnet. Depending on the mode, the routing table on either end will be slightly different. The basic operation of the IPsec tunnel remains the same, regardless of the specified mode.

Example: Verifying the Results for the Dynamic Virtual Tunnel Interface Easy VPN Client

The following examples illustrate different ways to display the status of the DVTI.

```
Router# show running-config interface Virtual-Access2
Building configuration ...
Current configuration : 148 bytes
interface Virtual-Access2
ip unnumbered Loopback1
tunnel source FastEthernet0/0
 tunnel destination 172.18.143.246
tunnel mode ipsec ipv4
end
Router# show running-config interface Loopback1
Building configuration ...
Current configuration : 65 bytes
interface Loopback1
ip address 192.168.1.1 255.255.255.255
end
Router# show ip route
Codes: C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, M - mobile, B - BGP
      D - EIGRP, EX - EIGRP external, O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
      N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
      E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, su - IS-IS summary, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2
      ia - IS-IS inter area, * - candidate default, U - per-user static route
      o - ODR, P - periodic downloaded static route
Gateway of last resort is 172.18.143.1 to network 0.0.0.0
    10.0.0.0/32 is subnetted, 1 subnets
       10.1.1.1 is directly connected, Loopback0
С
    172.18.0.0/24 is subnetted, 1 subnets
С
      172.18.143.0 is directly connected, FastEthernet0/0
    192.168.1.0/32 is subnetted, 1 subnets
С
      192.168.1.1 is directly connected, Loopback1
S*
    0.0.0.0/0 [1/0] via 0.0.0.0, Virtual-Access2
Router# show crypto ipsec client ezvpn
Easy VPN Remote Phase: 6
Tunnel name : CLIENT
Inside interface list: FastEthernet0/1
Outside interface: Virtual-Access2 (bound to FastEthernet0/0)
Current State: IPSEC ACTIVE
Last Event: SOCKET UP
Address: 192.168.1.1
Mask: 255.255.255.255
Save Password: Allowed
Current EzVPN Peer: 172.18.143.246
```

Example: VRF-Aware IPsec with a Dynamic VTI When VRF Is Configured Under a Virtual Template

The following example shows how to configure VRF-aware IPsec under a virtual template to take advantage of the DVTI:

```
hostname cisco 7206
1
ip vrf VRF-100-1
 rd 1:1
1
ip vrf VRF-100-2
 rd 1:1
I.
1
crypto keyring cisco-100-1
  pre-shared-key address 10.1.1.1 key cisco-100-1
crypto keyring cisco-100-2
 pre-shared-key address 10.1.2.1 key cisco-100-2
crypto isakmp profile cisco-isakmp-profile-100-1
 keyring cisco-100-1
  match identity address 10.1.1.0 255.255.255.0
 virtual-template 101
crypto isakmp profile cisco-isakmp-profile-100-2
  keyring cisco-100-2
 match identity address 10.1.2.0 255.255.255.0
 virtual-template 102
1
1
crypto ipsec transform-set cisco esp-aes esp-sha-hmac
crypto ipsec profile cisco-ipsec-profile-101
  set security-policy limit 3
  set transform-set cisco
!
crypto ipsec profile cisco-ipsec-profile-102
  set security-policy limit 5
  set transform-set Cisco
interface Virtual-Template101 type tunnel
  ip vrf forwarding VRF-100-1
  ip unnumbered Ethernet 0/0
  tunnel mode ipsec ipv4
  tunnel protection ipsec profile cisco-ipsec-profile-101
1
interface Virtual-Template102 type tunnel
 ip vrf forwarding VRF-100-2
 ip unnumbered Ethernet 0/0
  tunnel mode ipsec ipv4
  tunnel protection ipsec profile cisco-ipsec-profile-102
1
```

Example: VRF-Aware IPsec with Dynamic VTI When VRF Is Configured Under a Virtual Template with the Gateway Option in an IPsec Profile

The following example shows how to configure VRF-aware IPsec to take advantage of the DVTI, when the VRF is configured under a virtual template with the gateway option in an IPsec profile.

```
hostname ASR 1000
!
ip vrf VRF-100-1
rd 1:1
!
ip vrf VRF-100-2
```

rd 1:1

```
L.
Т
1
crypto keyring cisco-100-1
pre-shared-key address 10.1.1.1 key cisco-100-1
crypto keyring cisco-100-2
pre-shared-key address 10.1.2.1 key cisco-100-2
crypto isakmp profile cisco-isakmp-profile-100-1
keyring cisco-100-1
match identity address 10.1.1.0 255.255.255.0
virtual-template 101
crypto isakmp profile cisco-isakmp-profile-100-2
keyring cisco-100-2
match identity address 10.1.2.0 255.255.255.0
virtual-template 102
crypto ipsec transform-set cisco esp-3des esp-sha-hmac
crypto ipsec profile cisco-ipsec-profile-101
set security-policy limit 3
set transform-set cisco
set reverse-route gateway 172.16.0.1
crypto ipsec profile cisco-ipsec-profile-102
set security-policy limit 5
set transform-set cisco
set reverse-route gateway 172.16.0.1
L.
interface Virtual-Template101 type tunnel
ip vrf forwarding VRF-100-1
ip unnumbered Ethernet 0/0
tunnel mode ipsec ipv4
tunnel protection ipsec profile cisco-ipsec-profile-101
interface Virtual-Template102 type tunnel
ip vrf forwarding VRF-100-2
ip unnumbered Ethernet 0/0
tunnel mode ipsec ipv4
tunnel protection ipsec profile cisco-ipsec-profile-102
!
```

Example: VRF-Aware IPsec with a Dynamic VTI When VRF Is Configured Under an ISAKMP Profile

```
hostname cisco 7206
!
ip vrf VRF-100-1
  rd 1:1
!
ip vrf VRF-100-2
  rd 1:1
!
crypto keyring cisco-100-1
  pre-shared-key address 10.1.1.1 key cisco-100-1
crypto keyring cisco-100-2
  pre-shared-key address 10.1.2.1 key cisco-100-2
crypto isakmp profile cisco-isakmp-profile-100-1
```

```
vrf VRF-100-1
  keyring cisco-100-1
 match identity address 10.1.1.0 255.255.255.0
 virtual-template 1
crypto isakmp profile cisco-isakmp-profile-100-2
  vrf VRF-100-2
  keyring cisco-100-2
 match identity address 10.1.2.0 255.255.255.0
 virtual-template 1
1
1
crypto ipsec transform-set cisco esp-aes esp-sha-hmac
crypto ipsec profile cisco-ipsec-profile
 set security-policy limit 3
  set transform-set cisco
1
1
interface Virtual-Template 1 type tunnel
 ip unnumbered ethernet 0/0
 tunnel mode ipsec ipv4
 tunnel protection ipsec profile cisco-ipsec-profile
ļ
1
```

Example: VRF-Aware IPsec with a Dynamic VTI When VRF Is Configured Under an ISAKMP Profile and a Gateway Option in an IPsec Profile

The following example shows how to configure VRF-aware IPsec to take advantage of the DVTI, when the VRF is configured under an ISAKMP profile and a gateway option in an IPsec profile:

```
hostname ASR 1000
ip vrf VRF-100-1
rd 1:1
1
ip vrf VRF-100-2
rd 1:1
1
crypto keyring cisco-100-1
pre-shared-key address 10.1.1.1 key cisco-100-1
crypto keyring cisco-100-2
pre-shared-key address 10.1.2.1 key cisco-100-2
crypto isakmp profile cisco-isakmp-profile-100-1
vrf VRF-100-1
 keyring cisco-100-1
match identity address 10.1.1.0 255.255.255.0
virtual-template 1
crypto isakmp profile cisco-isakmp-profile-100-2
vrf VRF-100-2
keyring cisco-100-2
match identity address 10.1.2.0 255.255.255.0
virtual-template 1
!
1
crypto ipsec transform-set cisco esp-3des esp-sha-hmac
crypto ipsec profile cisco-ipsec-profile
set security-policy limit 3
```

```
set transform-set cisco
set reverse-route gateway 172.16.0.1
!
!
!
interface Virtual-Template1 type tunnel
ip unnumbered Ethernet 0/0
tunnel mode ipsec ipv4
tunnel protection ipsec profile cisco-ipsec-profile
!
```

Example: VRF-Aware IPsec with a Dynamic VTI When a VRF Is Configured Under Both a Virtual Template and an ISAKMP Profile



Note

When separate VRFs are configured under an ISAKMP profile and a virtual template, the VRF configured under the virtual template takes precedence. This configuration is not recommended.

The following example shows how to configure VRF-aware IPsec to take advantage of the DVTI when the VRF is configured under both a virtual template and an ISAKMP profile:

```
hostname ASR 1000
ip vrf test-vti2
rd 1:2
route-target export 1:1
route-target import 1:1
ip vrf test-vtil
rd 1:1
route-target export 1:1
route-target import 1:1
1
crypto isakmp profile cisco-isakmp-profile
vrf test-vti2
keyring key
match identity address 10.1.1.0 255.255.255.0
L
interface Virtual-Template1 type tunnel
ip vrf forwarding test-vtil
 ip unnumbered Loopback 0
ip virtual-reassembly
 tunnel mode ipsec ipv4
 tunnel protection ipsec profile test-vtil
```

! • • end

!

Example: Configuring Multi-SA Support for Dynamic VTI Using IKEv2

The following examples show how to configure Multi-SA Support for Dynamic VTI using IKEv2:

```
!
aaa new-model
1
1
aaa authorization network grp-list local
1
aaa attribute list aaa-cisco-ikev2-profile-100-1
attribute type interface-config "ip vrf forwarding VRF-100-1"
attribute type interface-config "ip unnumbered Ethernet0/0"
1
aaa attribute list aaa-cisco-ikev2-profile-100-2
attribute type interface-config "ip vrf forwarding VRF-100-2"
attribute type interface-config "ip unnumbered Ethernet0/0"
aaa attribute list aaa-cisco-ikev2-profile-100-3
attribute type interface-config "ip vrf forwarding VRF-100-3"
attribute type interface-config "ip unnumbered Ethernet0/0"
!
1
aaa session-id common
ip vrf VRF-100-1
rd 101:1
route-target export 101:1
route-target import 101:1
1
ip vrf VRF-100-2
rd 102:2
route-target export 102:2
route-target import 102:2
ip vrf VRF-100-3
rd 103:3
route-target export 103:3
route-target import 103:3
1
crypto ikev2 authorization policy auth-policy-cisco-ikev2-profile-100-1
aaa attribute list aaa-cisco-ikev2-profile-100-1
ipsec flow-limit 3
crypto ikev2 authorization policy auth-policy-cisco-ikev2-profile-100-2
aaa attribute list aaa-cisco-ikev2-profile-100-2
ipsec flow-limit 3
1
crypto ikev2 authorization policy auth-policy-cisco-ikev2-profile-100-3
```

```
aaa attribute list aaa-cisco-ikev2-profile-100-3
ipsec flow-limit 3
1
crypto ikev2 proposal ikev2-proposal
encryption aes
integrity sha
group 14
Т
crypto ikev2 policy ikev2-policy
match fvrf any
proposal ikev2-proposal
crypto ikev2 keyring cisco-ikev2
peer cisco-100-1
address 100.1.1.1
pre-shared-key cisco-100-1
peer cisco-100-2
address 100.1.2.1
pre-shared-key cisco-100-2
1
peer cisco-100-3
address 100.1.3.1
pre-shared-key cisco-100-3
crypto ikev2 profile cisco-ikev2-profile-100-1
match fvrf any
match identity remote address 10.1.1.1 255.255.255.255
authentication local pre-share
authentication remote pre-share
keyring cisco-ikev2
aaa authorization group grp-list auth-policy-cisco-ikev2-profile-100-1
virtual-template 1
1
crypto ikev2 profile cisco-ikev2-profile-100-2
match fvrf any
match identity remote address 10.1.2.1 255.255.255.255
authentication local pre-share
authentication remote pre-share
keyring cisco-ikev2
aaa authorization group group-list auth-policy-cisco-ikev2-profile-100-2
virtual-template 1
crypto ikev2 profile cisco-ikev2-profile-100-3
match fyrf any
match identity remote address 10.1.3.1 255.255.255.255
authentication local pre-share
authentication remote pre-share
keyring cisco-ikev2
aaa authorization group group-list auth-policy-cisco-ikev2-profile-100-3
virtual-template 1
1
T.
crypto ipsec transform-set cisco esp-aes esp-sha-hmac
crypto ipsec profile cisco-ipsec-profile
set transform-set cisco
set reverse-route distance 10
set reverse-route tag 321
interface Virtual-Template1 type tunnel
ip unnumbered Ethernet0/0
tunnel mode ipsec ipv4
```

```
tunnel protection ipsec profile cisco-ipsec-profile
!
```

Example: Dynamic Virtual Tunnel Interface with Virtual Firewall

The DVTI Easy VPN server can be configured behind a virtual firewall. Behind-the-firewall configuration allows users to enter the network, while the network firewall is protected from unauthorized access. The virtual firewall uses Context-Based Access Control (CBAC) and NAT applied to the Internet interface as well as to the virtual template.

```
hostname cisco 7206
.
ip inspect max-incomplete high 1000000
ip inspect max-incomplete low 800000
ip inspect one-minute high 1000000
ip inspect one-minute low 800000
ip inspect tcp synwait-time 60
ip inspect tcp max-incomplete host 100000 block-time 2
ip inspect name IOSFW1 tcp timeout 300
ip inspect name IOSFW1 udp
1
interface GigabitEthernet0/1
 description Internet Connection
ip address 172.18.143.246 255.255.255.0
 ip access-group 100 in
 ip nat outside
1
interface GigabitEthernet0/2
description Internal Network
ip address 10.2.1.1 255.255.255.0
I
interface Virtual-Template1 type tunnel
ip unnumbered Loopback0
 ip nat inside
ip inspect IOSFW1 in
tunnel mode ipsec ipv4
 tunnel protection ipsec profile test-vtil
1
ip classless
ip route 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 172.18.143.1
ip nat translation timeout 120
ip nat translation finrst-timeout 2
ip nat translation max-entries 300000
ip nat pool test1 10.2.100.1 10.2.100.50 netmask 255.255.255.0
ip nat inside source list 110 pool test1 vrf test-vti1 overload
access-list 100 permit esp any any
access-list 100 permit udp any eq isakmp any
access-list 100 permit udp any eq non500-isakmp any
access-list 100 permit icmp any any
access-list 110 deny esp any any
access-list 110 deny
                      udp any eq isakmp any
access-list 110 permit ip any any
access-list 110 deny udp any eq non500-isakmp any
1
end
```

Example: Dynamic Virtual Tunnel Interface with QoS

You can add QoS to the DVTI tunnel by applying the service policy to the virtual template. When the template is cloned to make the virtual access interface, the service policy will also be applied to the virtual access interface. The following example shows the basic DVTI configuration with QoS added.

```
hostname cisco 7206
class-map match-all VTI
match any
1
policy-map VTI
  class VTI
  police cir 2000000
    conform-action transmit
    exceed-action drop
I
interface Virtual-Template1 type tunnel
 ip vrf forwarding test-vtil
ip unnumbered Loopback0
ip virtual-reassembly
 tunnel mode ipsec ipv4
tunnel protection ipsec profile test-vtil
 service-policy output VTI
Т
end
```

Example: Dynamic Virtual Tunnel Interface Using GRE with IPsec Protection

```
Router1(config)# crypto ipsec transform-set MyTransformSet esp-aes esp-sha-hmac
Router1(cfg-crypto-trans)# mode transport
Router1(cfg-crypto-trans)# exit
Router1# config terminal
Router1(config)# crypto ipsec profile MyProfile set transform-set MyTransformSet
Router1(config)# interface Tunnel1
Router1(config-if)# description to-3800
Router1(config-if)# ip address 172.29.0.137 255.255.255.252
Router1(config-if)# tunnel source Ethernet0/0
Router1(config-if)# tunnel destination 10.38.38.1
Router1(config-if)# tunnel protection ipsec profile MyProfile
```

The show interface tunnel command verifies the tunnel interface configuration.

Note The tunnel transport MTU accounts for IPsec encryption overhead with GRE when used with the above configuration.

router1# show interface tunnel 1

L

```
Tunnell is up, line protocol is up
        Hardware is Tunnel
        Description: to-3800
        Internet address is 172.29.0.137/30
        MTU 17880 bytes, BW 100 Kbit/sec, DLY 50000 usec,
            reliability 255/255, txload 1/255, rxload 1/255
        Encapsulation TUNNEL, loopback not set
        Keepalive not set
        Tunnel source 10.39.39.1 (Ethernet0/0), destination 10.38.38.1
         Tunnel Subblocks:
             src-track:
                 Tunnell source tracking subblock associated with Ethernet0/0
                 Set of tunnels with source Ethernet0/0, 1 member (includes iterators),
on interface <OK>
        Tunnel protocol/transport GRE/IP
            Key disabled, sequencing disabled
             Checksumming of packets disabled
        Tunnel TTL 255, Fast tunneling enabled
        Path MTU Discovery, ager 10 mins, min MTU 92
        Tunnel transport MTU 1440 bytes
```

Additional References for IPsec Virtual Tunnel Interface

Related	Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
Cisco IOS commands	Cisco IOS Master Command List, All Releases
Security commands	Cisco IOS Security Command Reference Commands A to C
	Cisco IOS Security Command Reference Commands D to L
	Cisco IOS Security Command Reference Commands M to R
	• Cisco IOS Security Command Reference Commands S to Z
IPsec configuration	Configuring Security for VPNs with IPsec
QoS configuration	Cisco IOS Quality of Service Solutions Configuration Guide
EasyVPN configuration	Cisco Easy VPN Remote
	• Easy VPN Server
Recommended cryptographic algorithms	Next Generation Encryption

Standards and RFCs

Standard/RFC	Title
RFC 2401	Security Architecture for the Internet Protocol
RFC 2408	Internet Security Association and Key Management Protocol
RFC 2409	The Internet Key Exchange (IKE)

Technical Assistance

Description	Link
The Cisco Support and Documentation website provides online resources to download documentation, software, and tools. Use these resources to install and configure the software and to troubleshoot and resolve technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support and Documentation website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.	http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html

Feature Information for IPsec Virtual Tunnel Interfaces

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Feature Name	Releases	Feature Configuration Information
Dynamic IPsec VTIs	12.3(7)T 12.3(14)T	Dynamic VTIs enable efficient use of IP addresses and provide secure connectivity. Dynamic VTIs allow dynamically downloadable per-group and per-user policies to be configured on a RADIUS server. IPsec dynamic VTIs allow you to create highly secure connectivity for remote access VPNs. The dynamic VTI simplifies VRF-aware IPsec deployment. The following commands were introduced or modified: crypto isakmp profile, interface virtual-template, show vtemplate, tunnel mode, virtual-template.
FlexVPN Mixed Mode Support	15.4(2)T	The FlexVPN Mixed Mode feature provides support for carrying IPv4 traffic over IPsec IPv6 transport. This is the first phase towards providing dual stack support on the IPsec stack. This implementation does not support using a single IPsec security association (SA) pair for both IPv4 and IPv6 traffic. This feature is only supported for Remote Access VPN with IKEv2 and Dynamic VTI.
IKE Profile Based Tunnel Selection	15.3(3)M	The Profile Based Tunnel Selection feature uses the Internet Key Exchange (IKE) or Internet Key Exchange version 2 (IKEv2) profile to select a tunnel interface for an IPsec session thereby allowing tunnel interfaces to share the tunnel source IP address and IPsec transform set without sharing the IPsec security association databases (SADBs) among tunnel interfaces. The following commands were introduced or modified: tunnel protection ipsec profile.

Table 3: Feature Information for IPsec Virtual Tunnel Interfaces

Feature Name	Releases	Feature Configuration Information
Multi-SA for Dynamic VTIs	15.2(1)T	The DVTI can accept multiple IPsec selectors that are proposed by the initiator.
		The following commands were introduced or modified: set security-policy limit, set reverse-route.
Static IPsec VTIs	12.2(33)SRA	IPsec VTIs provide a routable
	12.2(33)SXH	tunnels and an easy way to define
	12.3(7)T	protection between sites to form an overlay network IPsec VTIs
	12.3(14)T	simplify configuration of IPsec for protection of remote links, support multicast, and simplify network
Tunnel Mode Auto Selection	15.4(2)T	The Tunnel Mode Auto Selection feature eases the configuration and spares you about knowing the responder's details. This feature automatically applies the tunneling protocol (GRE or IPsec) and transport protocol (IPv4 or IPv6) on the virtual template as soon as the IKE profile creates the virtual access interface.
		The following command was introduced or modified: virtual-template
Mixed Mode for IPsec VTI	15.6(1)T	The Mixed Mode feature provides support where traffic tunneled is either IPv4 or IPv6 but not both. This implementation supports only Mixed Mode for VTI for both IKEv1 and IKEv2.
		The following command was introduced or modified: tunnel mode, crypto ipsec profile
		Mixed Mode for IPsec VTI

Feature Name	Releases	Feature Configuration Information
FlexVPN Mixed Mode v6 over v4 Transport		The FlexVPN Mixed Mode v6 over v4 Transport feature provides support for carrying IPv6 traffic over IPsec IPv4 transport. This implementation does not support using a single IPsec security association (SA) pair for both IPv4 and IPv6 traffic.



CHAPTER J

L2TP IPsec Support for NAT and PAT Windows Clients

The L2TP IPsec Support for NAT and PAT Windows Clients feature allows mulitple Windows client to connect to an IPsec-enabled Cisco IOS Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol (L2TP) Network Server (LNS) through a network address translation (NAT) or port address translation (PAT) server.

When a Windows client connects to an IPsec-enabled Cisco IOS LNS router through a NAT or PAT server and another Windows client connects to the same Cisco IOS LNS router, the first client's connection is terminated. The L2TP IPsec Support for NAT and PAT Windows Clients feature ensures that Windows client connections in this environment are established and maintained until the connection is closed.

Note

Security threats, as well as the cryptographic technologies to help protect against them, are constantly changing. For more information about the latest Cisco cryptographic recommendations, see the Next Generation Encryption (NGE) white paper.

- Finding Feature Information, on page 89
- Prerequisites for L2TP IPsec Support for NAT and PAT Windows Clients, on page 90
- Restrictions for L2TP IPsec Support for NAT and PAT Windows Clients, on page 90
- Information About L2TP IPsec Support for NAT and PAT Windows Clients, on page 90
- How to Enable L2TP IPsec Support for NAT and PAT Windows Clients, on page 92
- Configuration Examples for L2TP IPsec Support for NAT and PAT Windows Clients, on page 94
- Additional References, on page 96
- Feature Information for L2TP IPsec Support for NAT and PAT Windows Clients, on page 97

Finding Feature Information

Your software release may not support all the features documented in this module. For the latest caveats and feature information, see **Bug Search** Tool and the release notes for your platform and software release. To find information about the features documented in this module, and to see a list of the releases in which each feature is supported, see the feature information table.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Prerequisites for L2TP IPsec Support for NAT and PAT Windows Clients

- Windows clients environment, IPsec-enabled Cisco IOS LNS routers and a NAT or PAT server between the Windows clients and the Cisco IOS LNS router.
- You must understand the following concepts and configuration requirements:
 - Cisco IOS LNS routers
 - IPsec
 - L2TP
 - NAT and PAT
 - Windows 2000

Restrictions for L2TP IPsec Support for NAT and PAT Windows Clients

- The L2TP IPsec Support for NAT and PAT Windows Clients feature is tested only with Windows 2000 L2TP/IPsec clients running hotfix 818043.
- PAT is not the default behavior and is incompatible with IPsec because PAT changes the LNS header port information.
- L2TP requires Windows clients to have Microsoft DUN configured. L2TP is only supported by Windows 2000 MS-DUN (Windows 95, Windows 98, or Windows NT do not support L2TP).
- Windows clients cannot connect to an Cisco IOS L2TP over IPsec server if a NAT server is used to translate the messages from the router. To enable the connection, connect the router parallelly to the NAT server so that Network Address Translation Traversal (NAT-T) is not required or use an alternate protocol such as Point-to-Point Tunnelling Protocol (PPTP), IPsec, or SSL.

Information About L2TP IPsec Support for NAT and PAT Windows Clients

How L2TP IPsec Support for NAT and PAT Windows Clients Works

When a Windows client connects to an IPsec-enabled Cisco IOS LNS router through a NAT or PAT server and another Windows client connects to the same Cisco IOS LNS router, the first client's connection is terminated.

Note

If IPsec is not enabled or there is no NAT or PAT server, multiple Windows clients can connect to the Cisco IOS LNS router.

L2TP IPsec Support for NAT and PAT Windows Clients Feature not Enabled

The figure below shows two Windows 2000 clients that are trying to connect to an end host through a router running NAT or PAT and IPsec-enabled Cisco IOS LNS router.

Figure 8: Multiple Windows 2000 Clients, NAT Router, and Cisco IOS LNS Router



The Windows 2000 Client #1 establishes an IPsec-protected L2TP tunnel to the Cisco IOS LNS router. The Windows 2000 Client #1 and the Cisco IOS LNS router recognize that there is a NAT router located between them and the NAT router is enabled with IPsec and NAT-Traversal (NAT-T). The Windows 2000 Client #1 attempts to establish an IPsec security association (SA) and requests a transport mode (which it does by default) with proxies from 10.0.0.2, its local address, to 192.168.200.231, the Cisco IOS LNS router's address.

In transport mode, NAT, running on the router, translates all outgoing connections (including 10.0.0.2) to its outside IP address (192.168.200.232), at which the address the traffic arrives. However, NAT cannot modify the L2TP port designation (1701), which is protected by the IPsec encrypted area. So, the local address now is 192.168.200.231, the remote address the 192.168.200.232 and the remote port is 1701. The traffic that matches the tunnel 192.168.200.231, port 1701 is sent to the Windows 2000 Client #1.

Windows 2000 Client #2 establishes an IPsec-protected L2TP tunnel to the Cisco IOS LNS router and NAT translates outgoing connections to its outside IP address (192.168.200.232) again, NAT cannot modify the L2TP port designation (1701) similar to Windows Client #1. The traffic that matches tunnel 192.168.200.231, port 1701 is now sent to Windows 2000 Client #2. which ends Windows Client #1's connection with the Cisco IOS LNS router since it is no longer receiving traffic.

L2TP IPsec Support for NAT and PAT Windows Clients Feature Enabled

When the L2TP IPsec Support for NAT and PAT Windows Clients feature is enabled, IPsec can translate the L2TP ports after decryption. This feature allows IPsec to map traffic from different hosts to different source ports. L2TP can now distinguish between traffic destined for multiple Windows 2000 clients.

When an security association (SA) is created, a translated port is assigned to the SA. This port is client-specific. The same port is used for any new SA created by that client. When an encrypted request is received and decrypted, the source port is translated from the standard value 1701 to a client specific value. The request with the translated port is then forwarded to L2TP.

As shown in the above figure, with port address translation enabled, the Windows 2000 Client #1 is assigned to the translated port number 1024, and Windows 2000 Client #2 is assigned to the translated port number 1025.

When L2TP sends the reply packet, it uses the translated port number and creates a packet to that destination port. IPsec uses the destination port number to select the SA with which to encrypt the packet. Before encrypting the packet, IPsec translates the destination port back to the standard port number 1701, which the Windows 2000 client expects. IPsec encrypts the packet either with the SA to Windows 2000 Client #1 if the destination port is 1024 or with the SA to Windows 2000 Client #2 if the destination port is 1025. The traffic is now sent to the appropriate client, and multiple Windows clients can be connected to a Cisco IOS LNS router through a NAT server at the same time.

The connection is maintained until one of the following actions occurs:

- The IPsec connection is closed.
- The NAT or PAT router ends the session.
- The Cisco IOS LNS router closes the session.
- A Windows client closes the session.

How to Enable L2TP IPsec Support for NAT and PAT Windows Clients

Enabling L2TP IPsec Support

SUMMARY STEPS

- 1. enable
- 2. configure terminal
- **3.** Do one of the following:
 - crypto map map-name seq-num [ipsec-isakmp]
 - crypto dynamic-map dynamic-map-name dynamic-seq-num
- 4. set nat demux
- 5. end
- **6.** Do one of the following:
 - show crypto map [interface interface | tag map-name]
 - show crypto dynamic-map [tag map-name]
- 7. show crypto ipsec sa

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose	
	Example:	Enter your password if prompted.	
	Router> enable		
Step 2	configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.	
	Example:		
	Router# configure terminal		
Step 3	Do one of the following:	Creates a static crypto map entry and enters crypto map	
	• crypto map map-name seq-num [ipsec-isakmp]	configuration mode.	
	• crypto dynamic-map dynamic-map-name	or	
	dynamic-seq-num	Creates a dynamic crypto map entry and enters crypto map configuration mode.	
	Example:		
	Router(config)# crypto map static map 5		
	Example:		
	Router(config)# crypto dynamic-map dynamic-map 10		
Step 4	set nat demux	Enables L2TP—IPsec support.	
	Example:		
	Router(config-crypto-map)# set nat demux		
Step 5	end	Exits crypto map configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.	
	Example:		
	Router(config-crypto-map)# end		
Step 6	Do one of the following:	(Optional) Displays the crypto map configuration	
	• show crypto map [interface interface tag	information.	
	map-name]	or	
	• show crypto dynamic-map [tag map-name]	(Optional) Displays the dynamic crypto map configuration information.	
	Example:		
	Router# show crypto map		
	Example:		
	Router# show crypto dynamic-map 10		
Step 7	show crypto ipsec sa	(Optional) Displays the settings used by current SAs.	
	Example:		
	Router# show crypto ipsec sa		

Configuration Examples for L2TP IPsec Support for NAT and PAT Windows Clients

Example: Dynamic Map Configuration

!

The following example shows how to enable the L2TP IPsec Support for NAT and PAT Windows Clients feature for a dynamic crypto map:

```
version 12.3
service timestamps debug datetime msec
service timestamps log datetime msec
no service password-encryption
hostname 72_LNS
1
boot-start-marker
boot-end-marker
!
aaa new-model
1
!
aaa authentication ppp default local
aaa session-id common
ip subnet-zero
1
1
no ip cef
no ip domain lookup
ip domain name cisco.com
ip dhcp excluded-address 198.51.100.1
ip dhcp excluded-address 198.51.100.10
ip vrf VPN
rd 1:1
1
! Enable virtual private networking.
vpdn enable
vpdn ip udp ignore checksum
!
! Default L2TP VPDN group
vpdn-group L2TP
! Enables the LNS to accept dial in requests; specifies L2TP as the tunneling
! protocol; specifies the number of the virtual templates used to clone
! virtual-access interfaces.
accept-dialin
 protocol l2tp
  virtual-template 1
! Disables L2TP tunnel authentication.
no 12tp tunnel authentication
1
1
crypto keyring L2TP
```

```
pre-shared-key address 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 key *****
!Defines an Internet Key Exchange (IKE) policy and assigns priority 1.
crypto isakmp policy 1
encr aes
authentication pre-share
group 14
lifetime 3600
!
crypto isakmp key cisco hostname w2k01
crypto isakmp keepalive 3600
1
crypto ipsec security-association lifetime seconds 600
1
!Defines a transform set.
crypto ipsec transform-set TS1 esp-aes esp-sha-hmac
mode transport
! Names the dynamic crypto map entry and enters crypto map configuration mode; Enables
! L2TP--IPSec support; Specifies which transform sets can be used with the crypto map
! entry.
crypto dynamic-map DYN MAP 10
set nat demux
set transform-set TS1!
!
crypto map CRYP_MAP 6000 ipsec-isakmp dynamic DYN_MAP
interface Loopback0
ip address 198.51.100.1 255.255.255.0
I.
interface FastEthernet0/0
ip address 198.51.100.110 255.255.255.0
no ip route-cache
duplex full
speed 100
crypto map CRYP MAP
1
interface FastEthernet0/1
ip address 198.51.100.1 255.255.255.0
duplex full
speed 100
Т
interface FastEthernet2/0
ip address 172.19.192.138 255.255.255.0
duplex full
1
interface Virtual-Template1
ip unnumbered Loopback0
peer default ip address pool POOL
ppp mtu adaptive
ppp authentication chap ms-chap
Т
router ospf 1
log-adjacency-changes
redistribute static subnets
network 198.51.100.10 0.0.0.255 area 0
ip local pool POOL 198.51.100.100 198.51.100.110
ip classless
ip route 171.0.0.0 255.0.0.0 172.19.192.1
no ip http server
no ip http secure-server
!
```

```
!
control-plane
!
gatekeeper
shutdown!
!
line con 0
exec-timeout 0 0
logging synchronous
stopbits 1
line aux 0
stopbits 1
line vty 0 4
!
end
```

Additional References

Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
Cisco IOS commands	Cisco IOS Master Commands List, All Releases
Security commands: complete command syntax, command mode, command history, defaults, usage guidelines, and examples	 Cisco IOS Security Command Reference Commands A to C Cisco IOS Security Command Reference Commands D to L Cisco IOS Security Command Reference Commands M to R Cisco IOS Security Command Reference Commands S to Z
IPsec and encryption	"Configuring Security for VPNs with IPsec"
Recommended cryptographic algorithms	Next Generation Encryption

Technical Assistance

Description	Link
The Cisco Support and Documentation website provides online resources to download documentation, software, and tools. Use these resources to install and configure the software and to troubleshoot and resolve technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support and Documentation website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.	http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html

Feature Information for L2TP IPsec Support for NAT and PAT Windows Clients

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Feature Name	Releases	Feature Information
L2TP IPsec Support for NAT and PAT Windows Clients	12.3(11)T4 12.4(1)	The L2TP IPsec Support for NAT and PAT Windows Clients feature allows mulitple Windows client to connect to an IPsec-enabled Cisco IOS Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol (L2TP) Network Server (LNS) through a network address translation (NAT) or port address translation (PAT) server. In 12.3(11)T4, this feature was introduced. The following commands were modified by this feature: crypto dynamic-map, crypto map, set nat demux, show crypto dynamic-map, show crypto map, show crypto ipsec sa.

Table 4: Feature Information for L2TP IPsec Support for NAT and PAT Windows Clients


CHAPTER -

Deleting Crypto Sessions of Revoked Peer Certificates

The Delete Crypto Sessions of Revoked Peer Certificates on CRL Download feature deletes an active crypto session with a peer if its certificate is found to be revoked when downloading a new CRL.

- Finding Feature Information, on page 99
- Restrictions for Deleting Crypto Sessions of Revoked Peer Certificates, on page 99
- Information About Deleting Crypto Sessions of Revoked Peer Certificates, on page 100
- How to Enable Deletion of Crypto Sessions for Revoked Peer Certificates, on page 100
- Configuration Examples for Deleting Crypto Sessions of Revoked Peer Certificates, on page 102
- Additional References for Deleting Crypto Sessions of Revoked Peers, on page 103
- Feature Information for Deleting Crypto Sessions of Revoked Peer Certificates, on page 104

Finding Feature Information

Your software release may not support all the features documented in this module. For the latest caveats and feature information, see Bug Search Tool and the release notes for your platform and software release. To find information about the features documented in this module, and to see a list of the releases in which each feature is supported, see the feature information table.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Restrictions for Deleting Crypto Sessions of Revoked Peer Certificates

- If revocation check is turned off and this feature is enabled, the IKE database is not populated with the number of sessions. The show outputs do not display information about the deleted sessions.
- Frequent enabling and disabling of this feature (with active sessions on the device) is not recommended.
- Frequent CRL downloads (in a span of 30 minutes) for the same issuername (CA server) is not recommended.

- CRL cache must be enabled. CRL caching cannot be disabled for trustpoint-based prefetch. However, it is possible to disable CRL caching for URL-based prefetch.
- In case of autoenrollment on IKE, the sessions are not deleted until the next IKE rekey, whereas in case of IKEv2, the tunnel must be cleared manually or wait until the certificate expires.
- If IKE has database of "issuer-name" and "SN" populated and receives a notification from PKI about certificate revocation, IKE would act on the PKI notification.

Information About Deleting Crypto Sessions of Revoked Peer Certificates

How a Crypto Session is Deleted

- 1. When negotiating via certificate authentication, the peer sends the CERT payload to the device, which parses each certificate to store information about serial number and the issuer names. This information forms the list of serial numbers issued by the corresponding CA server and is passed to PKI for revocation check.
- 2. If the revocation-check crl command is configured for a trustpoint, PKI informs IKE about the revocation check thereby disabling IKE from unnecessarily storing unwanted peer certification information.
- **3.** After a successful CRL download, PKI sends IKE a notification, which contains the "issuer-name." The CRL signature and content is verified. If there is no change in CRL content, PKI does not notify IKE.
- 4. If PKI notifies IKE containing the issuer name, IKE prepares a list of serial numbers for an issuer name and passes this list to PKI to verify if the serial numbers in the list are revoked.
- 5. PKI performs revocation check on the serial number list received from the IKE and checks the list against the downloaded CRL. The revoked serial number list is returned to IKE.
- 6. On a notification from PKI containing the list of revoked serial numbers, IKE identifies and deletes sessions pertaining to those serial numbers those sessions.

How to Enable Deletion of Crypto Sessions for Revoked Peer Certificates

Enabling Deletion of Crypto Sessions

Perform this task to enable the deletion of crypto sessions for revoked certificates.

SUMMARY STEPS

- 1. enable
- 2. clear crypto session
- **3**. configure terminal

- **4.** Do one of the following:
 - crypto isakmp disconnect-revoked-peers
 - crypto ikev2 disconnect-revoked-peers
- 5. end

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose	
Step 1	enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.	
	Example:	• Enter your password if prompted.	
	Device> enable		
Step 2	clear crypto session	(Optional) Deletes IPsec crypto sessions and IKE and	
	Example:	security associations.	
	Device# clear crypto session	Note Use this command to enable the feature for previously established sessions, else the feature is enabled for new sessions only.	
Step 3	configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.	
	Example:		
	Device# configure terminal		
Step 4	Do one of the following:	Disconnects IKE or IKEv2 crypto sessions with peers	
	• crypto isakmp disconnect-revoked-peers	having revoked certificates.	
	crypto ikev2 disconnect-revoked-peers	For this command to take effect, reconnected the existing	
	Example:	sessions.	
	Device(config)# crypto isakmp disconnect-revoked-peers		
	Example:		
	Device(config)# crypto ikev2 disconnect-revoked-peers		
Step 5	end	Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged	
	Example:	EXEC mode.	
	Device(config)# exit		

Verifying the Delete Crypto Session Capability for a Revoked Peer Certificate

Perform this task to verify if the delete crypto session capability is displayed in the show output.

SUMMARY STEPS

- 1. enable
- 2. show crypto isakmp peers

3. show crypto ikev2 session detail

DETAILED STEPS

Step 1	enable		
	Example:		
	Device> enable		
	Enables privileged EXEC mode.		
	• Enter your password if prompted.		
Step 2	show crypto isakmp peers		
Example:			
	Device# show crypto isakmp peers		
	Displays Internet Security Association and Key Management Protocol (ISAKMP) peer descriptions.		
Step 3	show crypto ikev2 session detail		
	Example:		
	Device# show crypto ikev2 session detail		
	Displays the status of active Internet Key Exchange Version 2 (IKEy2) sessions.		

Configuration Examples for Deleting Crypto Sessions of Revoked Peer Certificates

Example: Enabling Deletion of Crypto Sessions for an IKE Session

```
Device> enable
Device# clear crypto session
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# crypto isakmp disconnect-revoked-peers
Device# show crypto isakmp peers
Peer: 150.1.1.2 Port: 500 Local: 150.1.1.1
Phase1 id: 150.1.1.2
Disconnect Revoked Peer: Enabled
```

Example: Enabling Deletion of Crypto Sessions for an IKEv2 Session

```
Device> enable
Device# clear crypto session
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# crypto ikev2 disconnect-revoked-peers
Device# show crypto ikev2 session detail
```

L

```
Session-id:1, Status:UP-ACTIVE, IKE count:1, CHILD count:1
Tunnel-id Local
                        Remote
                                           fvrf/ivrf
                                                              Status
           10.0.0.1/500 10.0.0.2/500
1
                                            (none) / (none) READY
      Encr: 3DES, Hash: SHA96, DH Grp:2, Auth: PSK
      Life/Remaining/Active Time: 86400/86157/248 sec
     CE id: 0, Session-id: 1, MIB-id: 1
     Status Description: Negotiation done
     Local spi: 750CBE827434A245 Remote spi: 4353FEDBABEBF24C
     Local id: 10.0.0.1
Local req mess id: 0
Local next mess id: 0
Local req queued: 0
Local window: 5
     Local id: 10.0.0.1
                                       Remote id:
                                                            10.0.0.2
                                        Remote req mess id: 0
                                      Remote next mess id: 2
Remote req queued: 0
      Local window: 5
                                      Remote window: 5
     DPD configured for 0 seconds
      NAT-T is not detected
      Disconnect Revoked Peer: Enabled
Child sa: local selector 10.0.0.1/0 - 10.0.0.1/65535
         remote selector 10.0.0.2/0 - 10.0.0.2/65535
          ESP spi in/out: 0x9360A95/0x6C340600
         CPI in/out: 0x9FE5/0xC776
          AH spi in/out: 0x0/0x0
          Encr: AES CBC, keysize: 128, esp hmac: SHA96
          ah hmac: Unknown - 0, comp: IPCOMP LZS, mode tunnel
```

Additional References for Deleting Crypto Sessions of Revoked Peers

Related Topic	Document Title
Cisco IOS commands	Cisco IOS Master Commands List, All Releases
Security commands	 Cisco IOS Security Command Reference Commands A to C Cisco IOS Security Command Reference Commands D to L Cisco IOS Security Command Reference Commands M to R Cisco IOS Security Command Reference Commands S to Z
Configuring IKE	Configuring Internet Key Exchange for IPsec VPNs
Configuring IKEv2	Configuring Internet Key Exchange Version 2 and FlexVPN Site-to-Site
Recommended cryptographic algorithms	Next Generation Encryption

Related Documents

Technical Assistance

Description	Link
The Cisco Support and Documentation website provides online resources to download documentation, software, and tools. Use these resources to install and configure the software and to troubleshoot and resolve technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support and Documentation website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.	http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html

Feature Information for Deleting Crypto Sessions of Revoked Peer Certificates

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Feature Name	Releases	Feature Information
Delete crypto session(s) of revoked peer cert(s) on CRL download	15.4(3)M	The Delete Crypto Sessions of Revoked Peer Certificates on CRL Download feature deletes an active crypto session with a peer if its certificate is found to be revoked when downloading a new CRL. The following commands were introduced or modified: crypto ikev2 disconnect-revoked-peers, crypto isakmp disconnect-revoked-peers, show crypto isakmp peers, show crypto ikev2 session detail.

Table 5: Feature Information for Deleting Crypto Sessions of Revoked Peer Certificates



SafeNet IPsec VPN Client Support

The SafeNet IPsec VPN Client Support feature allows you to limit the scope of an Internet Security Association and Key Management Protocol (ISAKMP) profile or ISAKMP keyring configuration to a local termination address or interface. The benefit of this feature is that different customers can use the same peer identities and ISAKMP keys by using different local termination addresses.

Release	Modification
12.3(14)T	This feature was introduced.
12.2(18)SXE	This feature was integrated into Cisco IOS Release 12.2(18)SXE.

- Finding Feature Information, on page 105
- Prerequisites for SafeNet IPsec VPN Client Support, on page 105
- Restrictions for SafeNet IPsec VPN Client Support, on page 106
- Information About SafeNet IPsec VPN Client Support, on page 106
- How to Configure SafeNet IPsec VPN Client Support, on page 107
- Configuration Examples for SafeNet IPsec VPN Client Support, on page 111
- Additional References, on page 111

Finding Feature Information

Your software release may not support all the features documented in this module. For the latest caveats and feature information, see **Bug Search** Tool and the release notes for your platform and software release. To find information about the features documented in this module, and to see a list of the releases in which each feature is supported, see the feature information table.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Prerequisites for SafeNet IPsec VPN Client Support

· You must understand how to configure ISAKMP profiles and ISAKMP keyrings.

Restrictions for SafeNet IPsec VPN Client Support

- The local address option works only for the primary address of an interface.
- If an IP address is provided, the administrator has to ensure that the connection of the peer terminates to the address that is provided.
- If the IP address does not exist on the device, or if the interface does not have an IP address, the ISAKMP
 profile or ISAKMP keyring will be effectively disabled.

Information About SafeNet IPsec VPN Client Support

ISAKMP Profile and ISAKMP Keyring Configurations Background

Prior to Cisco IOS Release 12.3(14)T, ISAKMP-profile and ISAKMP-keyring configurations could be only global, meaning that the scope of these configurations could not be limited by any locally defined parameters (VRF instances were an exception). For example, if an ISAKMP keyring contained a preshared key for address 10.11.12.13, the same key would be used if the peer had the address 10.11.12.13, irrespective of the interface or local address to which the peer was connected. There are situations, however, in which users prefer that associate keyrings be bound not only with virtual route forwarding (VRF) instances but also to a particular interface. For example, if instead of VRF instances, there are virtual LANS, and the Internet Key Exchange (IKE) is negotiated with a group of peers using one fixed virtual LAN (VLAN) interface. Such a group of peers uses a single preshared key, so if keyrings could be bound to an interface, it would be easy to define a wildcard key without risking that the keys would also be used for other customers.

Sometimes the identities of the peer are not in the control of the administrator, and even if the same peer negotiates for different customers, the local termination address is the only way to distinguish the peer. After such a distinction is made, if the traffic is sent to different VRF instances, configuring an ISAKMP profile is the only way to distinguish the peer. Unfortunately, when the peer uses an identical identity for all such situations, the ISAKMP profile cannot distinguish among the negotiations. For such scenarios, it would be beneficial to bind ISAKMP profiles to a local termination address. If a local termination address could be assigned, identical identities from the peer would not be a problem.

Local Termination Address or Interface

Effective with Cisco IOS Release 12.3(14)T, the SafeNet IPsec VPN Client Support feature allows you to limit the scope of ISAKMP profiles and ISAKMP keyrings to a local termination address or interface.

Benefit of SafeNet IPsec VPN Client Support

The benefit of this feature is that different customers can use the same peer identities and ISAKMP keys by using different local termination addresses.

How to Configure SafeNet IPsec VPN Client Support

This section contains the following procedures. The first two configurations are independent of each other.

Limiting an ISAKMP Profile to a Local Termination Address or Interface

To configure an ISAKMP profile and limit it to a local termination address or interface, perform the following steps.

SUMMARY STEPS

- 1. enable
- 2. configure terminal
- 3. crypto isakmp profile profile-name
- 4. keyring keyring-name
- 5. match identity address address
- 6. local-address {interface-name | ip-address [vrf-tag]}

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.
	Example:	• Enter your password if prompted.
	Router> enable	
Step 2	configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
	Example:	
	Router# configure terminal	
Step 3	crypto isakmp profile profile-name	Defines an ISAKMP profile and enters ISAKMP profile
	Example:	configuration mode.
	Router (config)# crypto isakmp profile profile1	
Step 4	keyring keyring-name	(Optional) Configures a keyring with an ISAKMP profile.
	Example:	A keyring is not needed inside an ISAKMP profile for least termination to work. Least termination works
	Router (conf-isa-profile)# keyring keyring1	even if Rivest, Shamir, and Adelman (RSA) certificates are used.
Step 5	match identity address address	Matches an identity from a peer in an ISAKMP profile.
	Example:	

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Router (conf-isa-profile)# match identity address 10.0.0.0 255.0.0.0	
Step 6	local-address {interface-name ip-address [vrf-tag]}	Limits the scope of an ISAKMP profile or an ISAKMP
	Example:	keyring configuration to a local termination address or interface.
	Router (conf-isa-profile)# local-address serial2/0	

Limiting a Keyring to a Local Termination Address or Interface

To configure an ISAKMP keyring and limit its scope to a local termination address or interface, perform the following steps.

SUMMARY STEPS

- 1. enable
- 2. configure terminal
- 3. crypto keyring keyring-name
- **4. local-address** {*interface-name* |*ip-address*[*vrf-tag*]}
- 5. pre-shared-key address address

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.
	Example:	• Enter your password if prompted.
	Router> enable	
Step 2	configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
	Example:	
	Router# configure terminal	
Step 3	crypto keyring keyring-name	Defines a crypto keyring to be used during IKE
	Example:	authentication and enters keyring configuration mode.
	Router (config)# crypto keyring keyring1	
Step 4	local-address {interface-name ip-address[vrf-tag]}	Limits the scope of an ISAKMP profile or an ISAKMP
	Example:	keyring configuration to a local termination address or interface.
	Router (conf-keyring)# local-address serial2/0	
Step 5	pre-shared-key address address	Defines a preshared key to be used for IKE authentication.
	Example:	

DETAILED STEPS

 Command or Action	Purpose
Router (conf-keyring)# pre-shared-key address 10.0.0.1	

Monitoring and Maintaining SafeNet IPsec VPN Client Support

The following **debug** and **show** commands may be used to monitor and maintain the configuration in which you limited the scope of an ISAKMP profile or ISAKMP keyring to a local termination address or interface.

SUMMARY STEPS

- 1. enable
- 2. debug crypto isakmp
- 3. show crypto isakmp profile

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.
	Example:	• Enter your password if prompted.
	Router> enable	
Step 2	debug crypto isakmp	Displays messages about IKE events.
	Example:	
	Router# debug crypto isakmp	
Step 3	show crypto isakmp profile	Lists all the ISAKMP profiles that are defined on a router.
	Example:	
	Router# show crypto isakmp profile	

Examples

debug crypto isakmp Command Output for an ISAKMP Keyring That IsBound to Local Termination Addresses Example

You have an ISAKMP configuration as follows (the address of serial2/0 is 10.0.0.1, and the address of serial2/1 is 10.0.0.2),

```
crypto keyring keyring1
! Scope of the keyring is limited to interface serial2/0.
local-address serial2/0
! The following is the key string used by the peer.
pre-shared-key address 10.0.0.3 key somerandomkeystring
crypto keyring keyring2
local-address serial2/1
! The following is the keystring used by the peer coming into serial2/1.
pre-shared-key address 10.0.0.3 key someotherkeystring
```

and if the connection is coming into serial2/0, keyring1 is chosen as the source of the preshared key (and keyring2 is ignored because it is bound to serial2/1), you would see the following output:

```
Router# debug crypto isakmp
*Feb 11 15:01:29.595: ISAKMP:(0:0:N/A:0):Keyring keyring2 is bound to
    10.0.0.0, skipping
*Feb 11 15:01:29.595: ISAKMP:(0:0:N/A:0):Looking for a matching key for
    10.0.0.3 in keyring1
*Feb 11 15:01:29.595: ISAKMP:(0:0:N/A:0): : success
*Feb 11 15:01:29.595: ISAKMP:(0:0:N/A:0):found peer pre-shared key
    matching 10.0.0.3
*Feb 11 15:01:29.595: ISAKMP:(0:0:N/A:0): local preshared key found
```

debug crypto isakmp Command Output for an ISAKMP ProfileThat Is Boundto a Local Termination Address Example

If you have the following configuration,

```
crypto isakmp profile profile1
  keyring keyring1
  match identity address 10.0.0.0 255.0.0.0
  local-address serial2/0
crypto isakmp profile profile2
  keyring keyring1
  keyring keyring2
  self-identity fqdn
  match identity address 10.0.0.1 255.255.255
  local-address serial2/1
```

and the connection is coming through the local terminal address serial2/0, you will see the following output:

```
Router# debug crypto isakmp
*Feb 11 15:01:29.935: ISAKMP:(0:0:N/A:0):
Profile profile2 bound to 10.0.0.0 skipped
*Feb 11 15:01:29.935: ISAKMP:(0:1:SW:1):: peer matches profile1 profile
```

show crypto isakmp profile Command Output Example

The following is an example of typical **show** command output for an ISAKMP profile that is bound to serial2/0:

```
Router# show crypto isakmp profile
ISAKMP PROFILE profile1
Identities matched are:
    ip-address 10.0.0.0 255.0.0.0
Certificate maps matched are:
    keyring(s): keyring1
    trustpoint(s): <all>
    Interface binding: serial2/0 (10.20.0.1:global)
```

Troubleshooting SafeNet IPsec VPN Client Support

If an ISAKMP profile or ISAKMP keyring fails to be selected, you should double-check the local-address binding in the ISAKMP profile or ISAKMP keyring configuration and follow the output of the IKE debugs to determine whether the peer is correctly terminating on the address. You may remove the local-address binding (to make the scope of the profile or keyring global) and check to determine whether the profile or keyring is selected to confirm the situation.

Configuration Examples for SafeNet IPsec VPN Client Support

This section contains the following configuration, debug command, and show command examples.

ISAKMP Profile Bound to a Local Interface Example

The following example shows that the ISAKMP profile is bound to a local interface:

```
crypto isakmp profile profile1
  keyring keyring1
  match identity address 10.0.0.0 255.0.0.0
local-address serial2/0
```

ISAKMP Keyring Bound to a Local Interface Example

The following example shows that the ISAKMP keyring is bound only to interface serial2/0:

```
crypto keyring
local-address serial2/0
```

pre-shared-key address 10.0.0.1

ISAKMP Keyring Bound to a Local IP Address Example

The following example shows that the ISAKMP keyring is bound only to IP address 10.0.0.2:

```
crypto keyring keyring1
local-address 10.0.0.2
```

pre-shared-key address 10.0.0.2 key

ISAKMP Keyring Bound to an IP Address and Limited to a VRF Example

The following example shows that an ISAKMP keyring is bound to IP address 10.34.35.36 and that the scope is limited to VRF examplevrf1:

```
ip vrf examplevrf1
  rd 12:3456
crypto keyring ring1
  local-address 10.34.35.36 examplevrf1
interface ethernet2/0
  ip vrf forwarding examplevrf1
  ip address 10.34.35.36 255.255.0.0
```

Additional References

The following sections provide references related to SafeNet IPsec VPN Client Support.

Related DocumentsStandards

Related Topic	Document Title		
Configuring ISAKMP profiles and ISAKMP keyrings		-Awa	re IPsec
Security commands		Cisco IOS Security Command Reference	
Standard		Title	
No new or modified standards are supported by this feature.			

MIBs

MIB	MIBs Link
No new or modified MIBs are supported by this feature.	To locate and download MIBs for selected platforms, Cisco IOS software releases, and feature sets, use Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL: http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs

RFCs

RFC	Title
No new or modified RFCs are supported by this feature.	

Technical Assistance

Description	Link
The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies.	http://www.cisco.com/techsupport
To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds.	
Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.	



Ability to Disable Extended Authentication for **Static IPsec Peers**

The Ability to Disable Extended Authentication for Static IPsec Peers feature allows users to disable extended authentication (Xauth), preventing the routers from being prompted for Xauth information--username and password.

- Finding Feature Information, on page 113
- Feature Overview, on page 113
- Supported Standards MIBs and RFCs, on page 114
- Prerequisites, on page 114
- Configuration Tasks, on page 115
- Configuration Examples, on page 115
- Feature Information for Ability to Disable Xauth for Static IPsec Peers, on page 116

Finding Feature Information

Your software release may not support all the features documented in this module. For the latest caveats and feature information, see Bug Search Tool and the release notes for your platform and software release. To find information about the features documented in this module, and to see a list of the releases in which each feature is supported, see the feature information table.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Feature Overview

Without the ability to disable Xauth, a user cannot select which peer on the same crypto map should use Xauth. That is, if a user has router-to-router IP security (IPsec) on the same crypto map as a virtual private network (VPN)-client-to-Cisco-IOS IPsec, both peers are prompted for a username and password. In addition, a remote static peer (a Cisco IOS router) cannot establish an Internet Key Exchange (IKE) security association (SA) with the local Cisco IOS router. (Xauth is not an optional exchange, so if a peer does not respond to an Xauth request, the IKE SA is deleted.) Thus, the same interface cannot be used to terminate IPsec to VPN clients (that need Xauth) as well as other Cisco IOS routers (that cannot respond to Xauth) unless this feature is implemented.

Benefits

If VPN-client-to-Cisco-IOS IPsec and router-to-router IPsec exist on a single interface, the Ability to Disable Extended Authentication for Static IPsec Peers feature allows a user to disable Xauth while configuring the preshared key for router-to-router IPsec. Thus, the router will not prompt the peer for a username and password, which are transmitted when Xauth occurs for VPN-client-to-Cisco-IOS IPsec.

Restrictions

Xauth can be disabled only if preshared keys are used as the authentication mechanism for the given crypto map.

Related Documents

- "Configuring Internet Key Exchange for IPsec VPNs" chapter in the Cisco IOS Security Configuration Guide: Secure Connectivity
- "Configuring Security for VPNs with IPsec" chapter in the Cisco IOS Security Configuration Guide: Secure Connectivity
- Cisco IOS Security Command Reference

Supported Standards MIBs and RFCs

Standards

None

MIBs

None

To locate and download MIBs for selected platforms, Cisco IOS releases, and feature sets, use Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL:

http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs

RFCs

No new or modified RFCs are supported by this feature.

Prerequisites

Before you can disable Xauth for static IPsec peers, you must complete the following tasks:

• Enable authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA).



Note

Configuring AAA is required only if the VPN-client-to-Cisco-IOS is using AAA authentication.

- Configure an IPsec transform.
- Configure a static crypto map.
- Configure ISAKMP policy.

Configuration Tasks

See the following sections for configuration tasks for the Ability to Disable Extended Authentication for Static IPsec Peers feature. Each task in the list is identified as either required or optional.

• Disabling Xauth for Static IPsec Peers, on page 115

Disabling Xauth for Static IPsec Peers

To disable Xauth for router-to-router IPsec, use the following command in global configuration mode:

Command	Purpose			
Router(config)# crypto isakmp key keystring address peer-address [mask] [no-xauth]	Configures a preshared authentication key. Use the no-xauth keyword if router-to-router IPsec is on the same crypto map as VPN-client-to-Cisco IOS IPsec. This keyword prevents the router from prompting the peer for Xauth information.		Configures a preshared authentication key. Use the no-xauth keyword if router-to-router IPsec is on the same crypto map as VPN-client-to-Cisco IOS IPsec. This keyword prevents the router from prompting the peer for Xauth information.	
	You must configure the local and remote peer for preshared keys.			
	Note	According to the design of preshared key authentication in IKE main mode, preshared keys must be based on the IP address of the peers. Although you can send hostname as the identity of preshared key authentication, the key is searched on the IP address of the peer; if the key is not found (based on the IP address) the negotiation will fail.		

Configuration Examples

Disabling Xauth for Static IPsec Peers Configuration

The following example shows how the local peer specifies the preshared key, designates the remote peer by its IP address, and disables Xauth:

crypto isakmp key sharedkeystring address 172.21.230.33 no-xauth

Feature Information for Ability to Disable Xauth for Static IPsec Peers

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Feature Name	Releases	Feature Information
Ability to Disable Extended Authentication for Static IPsec Peers	12.2(4)T	This feature allows users to disable Xauth, preventing the routers from being prompted for Xauth information. The following command was modified: crypto isakmp key .

Table 6: Feature Information for Ability to Disable Xauth for Static IPsec Peers



Crypto Conditional Debug Support

The Crypto Conditional Debug Support feature introduces three new command-line interfaces (CLIs) that allow users to debug an IP Security (IPSec) tunnel on the basis of predefined crypto conditions such as the peer IP address, connection-ID of a crypto engine, and security parameter index (SPI). By limiting debug messages to specific IPSec operations and reducing the amount of debug output, users can better troubleshoot a router with a large number of tunnels.

Feature History for Crypto Conditional Debug Support

Feature History	
Release	Modification
12.3(2)T	This feature was introduced.

- Finding Feature Information, on page 117
- Prerequisites for Crypto Conditional Debug Support, on page 117
- Restrictions for Crypto Conditional Debug Support, on page 118
- Information About Crypto Conditional Debug Support, on page 118
- How to Enable Crypto Conditional Debug Support, on page 119
- Configuration Examples for the Crypto Conditional Debug CLIs, on page 122
- Additional References, on page 123

Finding Feature Information

Your software release may not support all the features documented in this module. For the latest caveats and feature information, see **Bug Search** Tool and the release notes for your platform and software release. To find information about the features documented in this module, and to see a list of the releases in which each feature is supported, see the feature information table.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Prerequisites for Crypto Conditional Debug Support

To use the new crypto CLIs, you must be using a crypto image such as the k8 or k9 subsystem.

Restrictions for Crypto Conditional Debug Support

- This feature does not support debug message filtering for hardware crypto engines.
- Although conditional debugging is useful for troubleshooting peer-specific or functionality related Internet Key Exchange (IKE) and IPSec problems, conditional debugging may not be able to define and check large numbers of debug conditions.
- Because extra space is needed to store the debug condition values, additional processing overhead is added to the CPU and memory usage is increased. Thus, enabling crypto conditional debugging on a router with heavy traffic should be used with caution.

Information About Crypto Conditional Debug Support

Supported Condition Types

The new crypto conditional debug CLIs-- debug crypto condition, debug crypto condition unmatched, and show crypto debug-condition --allow you to specify conditions (filter values) in which to generate and display debug messages related only to the specified conditions. The table below lists the supported condition types.

Condition Type (Keyword)	Description
connid ¹	An integer between 1-32766. Relevant debug messages will be shown if the current IPSec operation uses this value as the connection ID to interface with the crypto engine.
flowid 1	An integer between 1-32766. Relevant debug messages will be shown if the current IPSec operation uses this value as the flow-ID to interface with the crypto engine.
FVRF	The name string of a virtual private network (VPN) routing and forwarding (VRF) instance. Relevant debug messages will be shown if the current IPSec operation uses this VRF instance as its front-door VRF (FVRF).
IVRF	The name string of a VRF instance. Relevant debug messages will be shown if the current IPSec operation uses this VRF instance as its inside VRF (IVRF).
peer group	A Unity group-name string. Relevant debug messages will be shown if the peer is using this group name as its identity.
peer hostname	A fully qualified domain name (FQDN) string. Relevant debug messages will be shown if the peer is using this string as its identity; for example, if the peer is enabling IKE Xauth with this FQDN string.
peer ipaddress	A single IP address. Relevant debug messages will be shown if the current IPSec operation is related to the IP address of this peer.

Table 7: Supported Condition Types for Crypto Debug CLI

Condition Type (Keyword)	Description
peer subnet	A subnet and a subnet mask that specify a range of peer IP addresses. Relevant debug messages will be shown if the IP address of the current IPSec peer falls into the specified subnet range.
peer username	A username string. Relevant debug messages will be shown if the peer is using this username as its identity; for example, if the peer is enabling IKE Extended Authentication (Xauth) with this username.
SPI 1	A 32-bit unsigned integer. Relevant debug messages will be shown if the current IPSec operation uses this value as the SPI.

¹ If an IPSec connid, flowid, or SPI is used as a debug condition, the debug messages for a related IPSec flow are generated. An IPSec flow has two connids, flowids, and SPIs--one inbound and one outbound. Both two connids, flowids, and SPIs can be used as the debug condition that triggers debug messages for the IPSec flow.

How to Enable Crypto Conditional Debug Support

Enabling Crypto Conditional Debug Messages

Performance Considerations

• Before enabling crypto conditional debugging, you must decide what debug condition types (also known as debug filters) and values will be used. The volume of debug messages is dependent on the number of conditions you define.



Note

Specifying numerous debug conditions may consume CPU cycles and negatively affect router performance.

• Your router will perform conditional debugging only after at least one of the global crypto debug commands--debug crypto isakmp, debug crypto ipsec, and debug crypto engine--has been enabled. This requirement helps to ensure that the performance of the router will not be impacted when conditional debugging is not being used.

Disable Crypto Debug Conditions

If you choose to disable crypto conditional debugging, you must first disable any crypto global debug CLIs you have issued ; thereafter, you can disable conditional debugging.



Note The reset keyword can be used to disable all configured conditions at one time.

SUMMARY STEPS

- 1. enable
- 2. debug crypto condition [connidintegerengine-idinteger] [flowidinteger engine-idinteger] [fvrf string] [ivrf string] [peer [group string] [hostname string] [ipv4 ipaddress] [subnet subnet mask] [username string]] [spi integer] [reset]
- 3. show crypto debug-condition {[peer] [connid] [spi] [fvrf] [ivrf] [unmatched]}
- 4. debug crypto isakmp
- 5. debug crypto ipsec
- 6. debug crypto engine
- 7. debug crypto condition unmatched [isakmp | ipsec | engine]

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.
	Example:	• Enter your password if prompted.
	Router> enable	
Step 2	debug crypto condition [connidintegerengine-idinteger][flowidinteger engine-idinteger][fvrf string][ivrf string] [peer [group string] [hostname string] [ipv4 ipaddress] [subnet subnet mask] [username string]] [spi integer] [reset]	Defines conditional debug filters.
	Example:	
	Router# debug crypto condition connid 2000 engine-id 1	
Step 3	<pre>show crypto debug-condition {[peer] [connid] [spi] [fvrf] [ivrf] [unmatched]}</pre>	Displays crypto debug conditions that have already been enabled in the router.
	Example:	
	Router# show crypto debug-condition spi	
Step 4	debug crypto isakmp	Enables global IKE debugging.
	Example:	
	Router# debug crypto isakmp	
Step 5	debug crypto ipsec	Enables global IPSec debugging.
	Example:	
	Router# debug crypto ipsec	

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 6	debug crypto engine	Enables global crypto engine debugging.
	Example:	
	Router# debug crypto engine	
Step 7	debug crypto condition unmatched [isakmp ipsec engine]	(Optional) Displays debug conditional crypto messages when no context information is available to check against
	Example:	debug conditions.
	Router# debug crypto condition unmatched ipsec	If none of the optional keywords are specified, all crypto-related information will be shown.

Enabling Crypto Error Debug Messages

To enable crypto error debug messages, you must perform the following tasks.

debug crypto error CLI

Enabling the **debug crypto error** command displays only error-related debug messages, thereby, allowing you to easily determine why a crypto operation, such as an IKE negotiation, has failed within your system.

Ì

Note When enabling this command, ensure that global crypto debug commands are not enabled; otherwise, the global commands will override any possible error-related debug messages.

SUMMARY STEPS

- 1. enable
- 2. debug crypto {isakmp | ipsec | engine} error

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.
	Example:	• Enter your password if prompted.
	Router> enable	
Step 2	debug crypto {isakmp ipsec engine} error	Enables only error debugging messages for a crypto area.
	Example:	
	Router# debug crypto ipsec error	

Configuration Examples for the Crypto Conditional Debug CLIs

Enabling Crypto Conditional Debugging Example

The following example shows how to display debug messages when the peer IP address is 10.1.1.1, 10.1.1.2, or 10.1.1.3, and when the connection-ID 2000 of crypto engine 0 is used. This example also shows how to enable global debug crypto CLIs and enable the **show crypto debug-condition** command to verify conditional settings.

```
Router#
debug crypto condition connid 2000 engine-id 1
Router#
debug crypto condition peer ipv4 10.1.1.1
Router#
debug crypto condition peer ipv4 10.1.1.2
Router#
debug crypto condition peer ipv4 10.1.1.3
Router#
debug crypto condition unmatched
! Verify crypto conditional settings.
Router#
show crypto debug-condition
Crypto conditional debug currently is turned ON
IKE debug context unmatched flag:ON
IPsec debug context unmatched flag:ON
Crypto Engine debug context unmatched flag:ON
IKE peer IP address filters:
10.1.1.1 10.1.1.2 10.1.1.3
Connection-id filters:[connid:engine_id]2000:1,
! Enable global crypto CLIs to start conditional debugging.
Router#
debug crypto isakmp
Router#
debug crypto ipsec
Router#
debug crypto engine
```

Disabling Crypto Conditional Debugging Example

The following example shows how to disable all crypto conditional settings and verify that those settings have been disabled:

```
Router#

debug crypto condition reset

! Verify that all crypto conditional settings have been disabled.

Router#

show crypto debug-condition

Crypto conditional debug currently is turned OFF

IKE debug context unmatched flag:OFF

IPsec debug context unmatched flag:OFF

Crypto Engine debug context unmatched flag:OFF
```

Additional References

The following sections provide references to the Crypto Conditional Debug Support feature.

Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
IPSec and IKE configuration tasks	"Internet Key Exchange for IPsec VPNs" section of <i>Cisco IOS Security</i> <i>Configuration Guide: Secure Connectivity</i>
IPSec and IKE commands	Cisco IOS Security Command Reference

Standards

Standards	Title
None	

MIBs

MIBs	MIBs Link
None	To locate and download MIBs for selected platforms, Cisco IOS software releases, and feature sets, use Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL:
	http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs

RFCs

RFCs	Title
None	

Technical Assistance

Description	Link
Technical Assistance Center (TAC) home page, containing 30,000 pages of searchable technical content, including links to products, technologies, solutions, technical tips, and tools. Registered Cisco.com users can log in from this page to access even more content.	http://www.cisco.com/techsupport



VPN Acceleration Module

VPN Acceleration Module (VAM) supports Data Encryption Standard (DES) or Triple DES (3DES) IPsec encryption at a rate greater than full-duplex DS-3 line rate (up to 145 Mbps) for site-to-site VPNs such as intranets and extranets. VAM also supports up to 5000 encrypted tunnels for mixed VPN environments that have both site-to-site and remote access VPN requirements. VAM integrates hardware-assisted Rivest, Shamir, and Adelman (RSA) and IP Payload Compression Protocol (IPPCP) layer 3 compression to accelerate RSA processing, thereby enhancing tunnel setup and improving overall VPN initialization. In environments where bandwidth is costly, VAM provides hardware-based IPPCP Lempel-Ziv-Stac (LZS) processing to compress network traffic before it is encrypted and sent over pay-per-byte WAN connections.

- Finding Feature Information, on page 125
- Prerequisites for VPN Acceleration Module, on page 125
- Information about VPN Acceleration Module (VAM), on page 126
- How To Configure VPN Acceleration Module (VAM), on page 129
- Configuration Examples for VPN Acceleration, on page 141
- Additional References for VPN Acceleration Module, on page 142
- Feature Information for VPN Acceleration Module, on page 143
- Glossary, on page 145

Finding Feature Information

Your software release may not support all the features documented in this module. For the latest caveats and feature information, see **Bug Search** Tool and the release notes for your platform and software release. To find information about the features documented in this module, and to see a list of the releases in which each feature is supported, see the feature information table.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Prerequisites for VPN Acceleration Module

You must configure IPSec and IKE on the router and a crypto map to all interfaces that require encryption service from the VPN Acceleration Module.

Information about VPN Acceleration Module (VAM)

VPN Acceleration Module (VAM) Overview

The VPN Acceleration Module (VAM) is a single-width acceleration module. It provides high-performance, hardware-assisted tunneling and encryption services suitable for VPN remote access, site-to-site intranet, and extranet applications. It also provides platform scalability and security while working with all services necessary for successful VPN deployments—security, quality of service (QoS), firewall and intrusion detection, service-level validation, and management. The VAM off-loads IPsec processing from the main processor, thus freeing resources on the processor engines for other tasks.

The VAM provides hardware-accelerated support for the following multiple encryption functions:

- 56-bit Data Encryption Standard (DES) standard mode: Cipher Block Chaining (CBC)
- 3-Key Triple DES (168-bit)
- Secure Hash Algorithm (SHA)-1 and Message Digest 5 (MD5)
- Rivest, Shamir, Adelman (RSA) public-key algorithm
- Diffie-Hellman key exchange RC4-40

Benefits

The VAM provides the following benefits:

- 10 tunnels per second
- The following number of tunnels based on the corresponding memory of the NPE:
 - 800 tunnels for 64 MB
 - 1600 tunnels for 128 MB
 - 3200 tunnels for 256 MB
 - 5000 tunnels for 512 MB
- RSA encryption
- Accelerated Crypto performance
- Accelerated Internet Key Exchange (IKE)
- Certificate support for automatic authentication using digital certificates
- Dual VAM support



Note

Support for dual VAMs is available on a Cisco 7200 series router with an NPE-G1, on Cisco IOS Release 12.2(15)T, 12.1(14)E, and 12.3 Mainline.

- Encryption services to any port adapter installed in the router. The interface on the port adapter must be configured with a crypto map to support IPSec.
- Full-duplex data transmission of over 100 Mbps with various encryption and compression schemes for 300 byte packages
- Hardware-based IPPCP LZS compression
- Network traffic compression that reduces bandwidth utilization
- Online Insertion and Removal (OIR)
- QoS, multiprotocol, and multicast feature interoperation
- Support for full Layer 3 routing, such as Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP), Open Shortest Path First (OSPF), and Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) across the IPSec VPN
- Up to 145 Mbps throughput using 3DES
- VPN initialization improvements

Performance Results for Single VAM

The following two tables provide performance results for a single VAM on a Cisco 7206VXR with an NPE-G1 processor, an onboard GE, and FE port adapters in slots 3 and 4.

clear_packet _size	crypto_packet_size	out_packet_size
64	96	114
300	336	354
1400	1432	1450
Mixed packet size - 344	378	396

pkt_size (bytes)	# of tunnels	measured_pps (pps)	meas_clear_ndr (Mbps)	meas_crypto_ndr (Mbps)	meas_out_ndr (Mbps)
64	4	65,224	33.39	50.09	59.48
	500	41,888	21.44	32.17	38.20
	1,000	40,480	20.73	31.09	36.92
	5,000	39,408	20.18	30.27	35.94
300	4	38,032	91.28	102.23	107.71
	500	37,184	89.24	99.95	105.31
	1,000	36,064	86.55	96.94	102.13
	5,000	36,016	86.44	96.81	101.99
1400	4	9,984	111.82	114.38	115.81

pkt_size (bytes)	# of tunnels	measured_pps (pps)	meas_clear_ndr (Mbps)	meas_crypto_ndr (Mbps)	meas_out_ndr (Mbps)
	500	9,848	110.29	112.82	114.24
	1,000	9,648	108.06	110.53	111.92
	5,000	9,616	107.70	110.16	111.55
Mixed packet size	4	31,472	86.61	95.17	99.70
	500	31,056	85.47	93.91	98.39
	1,000	30,128	82.91	91.11	95.45
	5,000	29,264	80.53	88.49	92.71

Performance Results for Dual VAMs

The following two tables provide performance results for dual VAMs on a Cisco 7206VXR with an NPE-G1 processor, an onboard GE, and FE port adapters in slots 3 and 4.

clear_packet _size	crypto_packet_size	out_packet_size
64	96	114
300	336	354
1400	1432	1450
Mixed packet size - 344	378	396

pkt_size (bytes)	# of tunnels	measured_pps (pps)	meas_clear_ndr (Mbps)	meas_crypto_ndr (Mbps)	meas_out_ndr (Mbps)
64	4	135,544	69.40	104.10	123.61
	500	61,520	31.50	47.25	56.11
	1,000	56,928	29.15	43.72	51.92
	5,000	43,744	22.40	33.60	39.89
300	4	71,336	171.21	191.75	202.02
	500	60,416	145.00	162.40	171.10
	1,000	56,016	134.44	150.57	158.64
	5,000	42,496	101.99	114.23	120.35
1400	4	18,736	209.84	214.64	217.34
	500	18,424	206.35	211.07	213.72

pkt_size (bytes)	# of tunnels	measured_pps (pps)	meas_clear_ndr (Mbps)	meas_crypto_ndr (Mbps)	meas_out_ndr (Mbps)
	1000	18,352	205.54	210.24	212.88
	5,000	18,352	205.54	210.24	212.88
Mixed packet size	4	60,416	166.26	182.70	191.40
	500	57,888	159.31	175.05	183.40
	1,000	55,488	152.70	167.80	175.79
	5,000	34,272	94.32	103.64	108.57

How To Configure VPN Acceleration Module (VAM)

On power up if the enabled LED is on, the VAM is fully functional and does not require any configuration commands. However, for the VAM to provide encryption services, you must complete the following tasks:

Creating IKE Policies

Before you begin

The following restrictions apply if you are configuring an AES IKE policy:

- Your device must support IPsec and long keys (the "k9" subsystem).
- AES cannot encrypt IPsec and IKE traffic if an acceleration card is present.

SUMMARY STEPS

- 1. enable
- **2**. configure terminal
- 3. crypto isakmp policy priority
- 4. encryption {des | 3des | aes | aes 192 | aes 256}
- 5. hash {sha | sha256 | sha384 | md5}
- 6. authentication {rsa-sig | rsa-encr | pre-share}
- 7. group {1 | 2 | 5 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 19 | 20 | 24}
- 8. lifetime seconds
- 9. exit
- **10**. exit
- 11. show crypto isakmp policy
- **12.** Repeat these steps for each policy you want to create.

I

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.
	Example:	• Enter your password if prompted.
	Router> enable	
Step 2	configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
	Example:	
	Router# configure terminal	
Step 3	crypto isakmp policy priority	Defines an IKE policy and enters config-isakmp
	Example:	configuration mode.
	Router(config)# crypto isakmp policy 10	• <i>priority</i> —Uniquely identifies the IKE policy and assigns a priority to the policy. Valid values: 1 to 10,000; 1 is the highest priority.
Step 4	encryption {des 3des aes aes 192 aes 256}	Specifies the encryption algorithm.
	Example:	• By default, the des keyword is used.
	Router(config-isakmp)# encryption aes 256	• des—56-bit DES-CBC (No longer
		recommended. AES is the recommended
		• 3des —168-bit DES (No longer recommended.
		AES is the recommended encryption algorithm)
		• aes—128-bit AES • aes 192—192-bit AES
		• aes 256—256-bit AES
Step 5	hash {sha sha256 sha384 md5}	Specifies the hash algorithm.
	Example:	• By default, SHA-1 (sha) is used.
	Router(config-isakmp)# hash sha	• The sha256 keyword specifies SHA-2 family 256-bit (HMAC variant) as the hash algorithm.
		• The sha384 keyword specifies SHA-2 family 384-bit (HMAC variant) as the hash algorithm.
		• The md5 keyword specifies MD5 (HMAC variant) as the hash algorithm. (No longer recommended. SHA-256 is the recommended replacement.)
Step 6	authentication {rsa-sig rsa-encr pre-share}	Specifies the authentication method.
	Example:	• By default, RSA signatures are used.
	Router(config-isakmp)# authentication pre-share	• rsa-sig —RSA signatures require that you configure your peer routers to obtain certificates from a CA.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		 rsa-encr—RSA encrypted nonces require that you ensure each peer has the other peer's RSA public keys. pre-share—Preshared keys require that you separately configure these preshared keys.
Step 7	group {1 2 5 14 15 16 19 20 24}	Specifies the Diffie-Hellman (DH) group identifier.
	Example:	• By default, DH group 1 is used.
	Router(config-isakmp)# group 14	 1—768-bit DH (No longer recommended.) 2—1024-bit DH (No longer recommended) 5—1536-bit DH (No longer recommended) 14—Specifies the 2048-bit DH group. 15—Specifies the 3072-bit DH group. 16—Specifies the 4096-bit DH group. 19—Specifies the 256-bit elliptic curve DH (ECDH) group. 20—Specifies the 384-bit ECDH group. 24—Specifies the 2048-bit DH/DSA group. The group chosen must be strong enough (have enough bits) to protect the IPsec keys during negotiation. A generally accepted guideline recommends the use of a 2048-bit group after 2013 (until 2030). Group 14 or higher (where possible) can be selected to meet this guideline. Even if a longer-lived security method is needed, the use of Elliptic Curve Cryptography is recommended, but group 15 and group 16 can also be considered.
Step 8	lifetime seconds Example: Router (config-isakmp) # lifetime 180	Specifies the lifetime of the IKE SA. • <i>seconds</i> —Time, in seconds, before each SA expires. Valid values: 60 to 86,400; default value: 86,400.
		Note The shorter the lifetime (up to a point), the more secure your IKE negotiations will be. However, with longer lifetimes, future IPsec SAs can be set up more quickly.
Step 9	exit	Exits config-isakmp configuration mode.
	Example:	
	Router(config-isakmp)# exit	
Step 10	exit	Exits global configuration mode.
	Example:	
	Router(config)# exit	

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 11	show crypto isakmp policy	(Optional) Displays all existing IKE policies.
	Example:	
	Router# show crypto isakmp policy	
Step 12	Repeat these steps for each policy you want to create.	

Examples

The following sample output from the **show crypto isakmp policy** command displays a warning message after a user tries to configure an IKE encryption method that the hardware does not support:

```
Router# show crypto isakmp policy

Protection suite of priority 1

encryption algorithm: AES - Advanced Encryption Standard (256 bit keys).

WARNING:encryption hardware does not support the configured

encryption method for ISAKMP policy 1

hash algorithm: Secure Hash Standard 2 (256-bit)

authentication method: Pre-Shared Key

Diffie-Hellman group: #14 (2048 bit)

lifetime: 3600 seconds, no volume limit
```

Configuring IPsec

After you have completed IKE configuration, configure IPsec at each participating IPsec peer. This section contains basic steps to configure IPsec.

Creating Crypto Access Lists

SUMMARY STEPS

- 1. enable
- **2**. configure terminal
- **3.** Do one of the following:
 - access-list access-list-number {deny | permit} protocol source source-wildcard destination destination-wildcard [log]
 - ip access-list extended name
- 4. Repeat Step 3 for each crypto access list you want to create.

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.
	Example:	• Enter your password if prompted.
	Device> enable	

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
	Example:	
	Device# configure terminal	
Step 3	 Do one of the following: access-list access-list-number {deny permit} protocol source source-wildcard destination destination-wildcard [log] ip access-list extended name 	 Specifies conditions to determine which IP packets are protected. You specify conditions using an IP access list designated by either a number or a name. The access-list command designates a numbered extended access list; the ip access-list extended command designates a named access list. Enable or disable crypto for traffic that matches these conditions. Tip Cisco recommends that you configure "mirror image" crypto access lists for use by IPsec and that you avoid using the any keyword.
	Example: Device (config) # access-list 100 permit ip 10.0.68.0 0.0.0.255 10.1.1.0 0.0.0.255 Example:	
	Device(config)# ip access-list extended vpn-tunnel	
Step 4	Repeat Step 3 for each crypto access list you want to create.	_

Configuring Transform Sets for IKEv1

SUMMARY STEPS

- 1. enable
- 2. configure terminal
- **3.** crypto ipsec transform-set transform-set-name transform1 [transform2 [transform3]]
- 4. mode [tunnel | transport]
- 5. end
- **6.** clear crypto sa [peer {*ip-address* | *peer-name*} | sa map *map-name* | sa entry *destination-address protocol spi*]
- 7. show crypto ipsec transform-set [tag transform-set-name]

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.
	Example:	• Enter your password if prompted.
	Device> enable	
Step 2	configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
	Example:	
	Device# configure terminal	

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	crypto ipsec transform-set transform-set-name transform1 [transform2 [transform3]]	Defines a transform set and enters crypto transform configuration mode.
	Example: Device(config)# crypto ipsec transform-set aesset esp-aes 256 esp-sha-hmac	• There are complex rules defining the entries that you can use for transform arguments. These rules are explained in the command description for the crypto ipsec transform-set command, and the table in "About Transform Sets" section provides a list of allowed transform combinations.
Step 4	<pre>mode [tunnel transport] Example: Device(cfg-crypto-tran) # mode transport</pre>	 (Optional) Changes the mode associated with the transform set. The mode setting is applicable only to traffic whose source and destination addresses are the IPsec peer addresses; it is ignored for all other traffic. (All other traffic is in tunnel mode only.)
Step 5	<pre>end Example: Device(cfg-crypto-tran)# end</pre>	Exits crypto transform configuration mode and enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 6	<pre>clear crypto sa [peer {ip-address peer-name} sa map map-name sa entry destination-address protocol spi] Example: Device# clear crypto sa</pre>	 (Optional) Clears existing IPsec security associations so that any changes to a transform set takes effect on subsequently established security associations. Manually established SAs are reestablished immediately. Using the clear crypto sa command without parameters clears out the full SA database, which clears out active security sessions. You may also specify the peer, map, or entry keywords to clear out only a subset of the SA database.
Step 7	show crypto ipsec transform-set [tag transform-set-name] Example: Device# show crypto ipsec transform-set	(Optional) Displays the configured transform sets.

Creating Static Crypto Maps

When IKE is used to establish SAs, the IPsec peers can negotiate the settings they use for the new security associations. This means that you can specify lists (such as lists of acceptable transforms) within the crypto map entry.

Perform this task to create crypto map entries that use IKE to establish SAs. To create IPv6 crypto map entries, you must use the **ipv6** keyword with the **crypto map** command. For IPv4 crypto maps, use the **crypto map** command without the **ipv6** keyword.


Security threats, as well as the cryptographic technologies to help protect against them, are constantly changing. For more information about the latest Cisco cryptographic recommendations, see the Next Generation Encryption (NGE) white paper.

SUMMARY STEPS

- 1. enable
- 2. configure terminal
- **3**. **crypto map** [**ipv6**] *map-name seq-num* [**ipsec-isakmp**]
- 4. match address access-list-id
- **5. set peer** {*hostname* | *ip-address*}
- 6. crypto ipsec security-association dummy {pps rate | seconds seconds}
- 7. set transform-set transform-set-name1 [transform-set-name2...transform-set-name6]
- 8. set security-association lifetime {seconds | kilobytes kilobytes | kilobytes disable}
- 9. set security-association level per-host
- **10.** set pfs [group1 | group14 | group15 | group16 | group19 | group2 | group20 | group24 | group5]
- 11. end
- **12.** show crypto map [interface interface | tag map-name]

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.
	Example:	• Enter your password if prompted.
	Device> enable	
Step 2	configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
	Example:	
	Device# configure terminal	
Step 3	crypto map [ipv6] map-name seq-num [ipsec-isakmp]	Creates or modifies a crypto map entry, and enters crypto
	Example:	map configuration mode.
	<pre>Device(config)# crypto map static-map 1 ipsec-isakmp</pre>	• For IPv4 crypto maps, use the command without the ipv6 keyword.
Step 4	match address access-list-id	Names an extended access list.
	Example:	• This access list determines the traffic that should be
	Device(config-crypto-m)# match address vpn-tunnel	protected by IPsec and the traffic that should not be protected by IPsec security in the context of this crypto map entry.
Step 5	ep 5 set peer {hostname ip-address} Specifies a remote IPsec p	Specifies a remote IPsec peer—the peer to which IPsec
	Example:	protected traffic can be forwarded.

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose	
	Device(config-crypto-m)# set-peer 192.168.101.1	• Repeat for multiple remote peers.	
Step 6	crypto ipsec security-association dummy {pps rate seconds seconds}	Enables generating dummy packets. These dummy packets are generated for all flows created in the crypto map.	
	Example:		
	Device(config-crypto-m)# set security-association dummy seconds 5		
Step 7	set transform-set transform-set-name1 [transform-set-name2transform-set-name6]	Specifies the transform sets that are allowed for this crypto map entry.	
	Example:	• List multiple transform sets in the order of priority	
	Device(config-crypto-m)# set transform-set aesset	(highest priority first).	
Step 8	set security-association lifetime {seconds seconds	(Optional) Specifies a SA lifetime for the crypto map entry.	
	kilobytes kilobytes kilobytes disable}	• By default, the SAs of the crypto map are negotiated	
	Example: Device (config-crypto-m) # set security-association	disabled.	
	lifetime seconds 2700		
Step 9	set security-association level per-host	(Optional) Specifies that separate SAs should be	
	Example:	established for each source and destination host pair.	
	<pre>Device(config-crypto-m)# set security-association level per-host</pre>	• By default, a single IPsec "tunnel" can carry traffic for multiple source hosts and multiple destination hosts.	
		Caution Use this command with care because multiple streams between given subnets can rapidly consume resources.	
Step 10	set pfs [group1 group14 group15 group16 group19 group2 group20 group24 group5]	(Optional) Specifies that IPsec either should ask for password forward secrecy (PFS) when requesting new SAs for this are not a contract or should domand PES in requests	
	Example:	received from the IPsec peer.	
	Device(config-crypto-m)# set pfs group14	• Group 1 specifies the 768-bit Diffie-Hellman (DH) identifier (default). (No longer recommended).	
		• Group 2 specifies the 1024-bit DH identifier. (No longer recommended).	
		• Group 5 specifies the 1536-bit DH identifier. (No longer recommended)	
		• Group 14 specifies the 2048-bit DH identifier.	
		• Group 15 specifies the 3072-bit DH identifier.	
		• Group 16 specifies the 4096-bit DH identifier.	

	Command or Action	Purpose
		• Group 19 specifies the 256-bit elliptic curve DH (ECDH) identifier.
		• Group 20 specifies the 384-bit ECDH identifier.
		• Group 24 specifies the 2048-bit DH/DSA identifier
		• By default, PFS is not requested. If no group is specified with this command, group 1 is used as the default.
Step 11	end	Exits crypto map configuration mode and returns to
	Example:	privileged EXEC mode.
	Device(config-crypto-m) # end	
Step 12	show crypto map [interface interface tag map-name]	Displays your crypto map configuration.
	Example:	
	Device# show crypto map	

Verifying the Configuration

SUMMARY STEPS

- 1. show crypto ipsec transform-set
- 2. show crypto map [interface interface | tag map-name]
- 3. show crypto ipsec sa [map map-name | address | identity | detail | interface]

DETAILED STEPS

```
Step 1 show crypto ipsec transform-set
```

Example:

Device# show crypto ipsec transform-set

```
Transform set combined-des-md5: {esp-des esp-md5-hmac}
  will negotiate = {Tunnel,},
Transform set t1: {esp-des esp-md5-hmac}
  will negotiate = {Tunnel,},
Transform set t100: {ah-sha-hmac}
  will negotiate = {Transport,},
Transform set t2: {ah-sha-hmac}
  will negotiate = {Tunnel,},
  {esp-des}
  will negotiate = {Tunnel,},
```

Displays the transform set configuration.

 Step 2
 show crypto map [interface interface | tag map-name]

Example:

Displays the crypto map configuration.

Step 3show crypto ipsec sa [map map-name | address | identity | detail | interface]Example:

```
Device# show crypto map ipsec sa interface
```

```
Crypto map tag: abc, local addr. 172.21.114.123
   local ident (addr/mask/prot/port): (172.21.114.123/255.255.255.255/0/0)
   remote ident (addr/mask/prot/port): (172.21.114.67/255.255.255.255/0/0)
   current_peer: 172.21.114.67
     PERMIT, flags={origin is acl,}
    #pkts encaps: 10, #pkts encrypt: 10, #pkts digest 10
    #pkts decaps: 10, #pkts decrypt: 10, #pkts verify 10
    #send errors 10, #recv errors 0
    local crypto endpt.: 172.21.114.123, remote crypto endpt.: 172.21.114.67
    path mtu 1500, media mtu 1500
     current outbound spi: 20890A6F
     inbound esp sas:
      spi: 0x257A1039(628756537)
        transform: esp-des esp-md5-hmac,
        in use settings ={Tunnel,}
        slot: 0, conn id: 26, crypto map: router-alice
        sa timing: remaining key lifetime (k/sec): (4607999/90)
       IV size: 8 bytes
        replay detection support: Y
     inbound ah sas:
     outbound esp sas:
      spi: 0x20890A6F(545852015)
       transform: esp-des esp-md5-hmac,
        in use settings ={Tunnel,}
        slot: 0, conn id: 27, crypto map: router-alice
        sa timing: remaining key lifetime (k/sec): (4607999/90)
        IV size: 8 bytes
        replay detection support: Y
    outbound ah sas:
interface: Tunnel0
   Crypto map tag: abc, local addr. 172.21.114.123
   local ident (addr/mask/prot/port): (172.21.114.123/255.255.255.255/0/0)
   remote ident (addr/mask/prot/port): (172.21.114.67/255.255.255.255/0/0)
   current peer: 172.21.114.67
    PERMIT, flags={origin is acl,}
    #pkts encaps: 10, #pkts encrypt: 10, #pkts digest 10
    #pkts decaps: 10, #pkts decrypt: 10, #pkts verify 10
    #send errors 10, #recv errors 0
    local crypto endpt.: 172.21.114.123, remote crypto endpt.: 172.21.114.67
    path mtu 1500, media mtu 1500
    current outbound spi: 20890A6F
    inbound esp sas:
```

```
spi: 0x257A1039(628756537)
   transform: esp-des esp-md5-hmac,
   in use settings ={Tunnel,}
   slot: 0, conn id: 26, crypto map: router-alice
   sa timing: remaining key lifetime (k/sec): (4607999/90)
   IV size: 8 bytes
   replay detection support: Y
inbound ah sas:
outbound esp sas:
spi: 0x20890A6F(545852015)
   transform: esp-des esp-md5-hmac,
   in use settings ={Tunnel,}
  slot: 0, conn id: 27, crypto map: router-alice
   sa timing: remaining key lifetime (k/sec): (4607999/90)
   IV size: 8 bytes
   replay detection support: Y
outbound ah sas:
```

Displays information about IPsec security associations.

Troubleshooting Tips

To verify that Cisco IOS software has recognized VAM, enter the **show diag** command and check the output. For example, when the router has the VAM in slot 1, the following output appears:

```
Router# show diag 1
  Slot 1:
      VAM Encryption/Compression engine. Port adapter
      Port adapter is analyzed
      Port adapter insertion time 00:04:45 ago
      EEPROM contents at hardware discovery:
      Hardware Revision
                       :1.0
      PCB Serial Number
                        :15485660
      Part Number
                        :73-5953-04
      Board Revision
                        :00
      RMA Test History
      RMA Number
                        :0-0-0-0
      RMA History
                        :00
      Deviation Number
                        :0-0
      Product Number
                         :CLEO
      Top Assy. Part Number
                         :800-10496-04
      CLEI Code
                         :
      EEPROM format version 4
      EEPROM contents (hex):
        0x00:04 FF 40 02 8A 41 01 00 C1 8B 31 35 34 38 35 36
        0x10:36 30 00 00 00 82 49 17 41 04 42 FF FF 03 00 81
        0x20:00 00 00 00 04 00 80 00 00 00 00 CB 94 43 4C 45
        0x40:20 C0 46 03 20 00 29 00 04 C6 8A FF FF FF FF FF
```

To see if the VAM is currently processing crypto packets, enter the **show pas vam interface** command. The following is sample output:

Router# show pas vam interface

```
Interface VAM 1/1 :
     ds:0x632770C8
                          idb:0x62813728
     Statistics of packets and bytes that through this interface:
      18 packets in
                                               18 packets out
    2268 bytes in
                                              2268 bytes out
       0 paks/sec in
                                                0 paks/sec out
       0 Kbits/sec in
                                                 0 Kbits/sec out
      83 commands out
                                               83 commands acknowledged
     cmdq_full_err :0
no_buffer :0
dst_orr____
                                      ppq_rx_err :0
                                      cmdq_rx_err
                                                             :0
     no_buffer :0
dst_overflow :0
                                        fallback
                                                             :0
                                       nr_overflow
                                                             :0
     dst_overflow :0
sess_expired :0
out_of_mem :0
invalid_fc :0
invalid_handle :0
input_underrun :0
kev_invalid :0
                                      pkt fragmented :0
                                       access denied :0
                                       invalid param
                                                             :0
                                        output overrun
                                                             :0
                                      output_overrun
                                                              :0
     Imput_invalidImput_invalidkey_invalid:0decrypt_failed:0attr_invalid:0attr_missing:0bad_imp_hash:0cant_fragmentout_of_handles:0compr_cancelledrng_st_fail:0cant_fragment
                                                             :0
                                                           :0
                                       attr_val_invalid :0
                                       obj_not_wrap :0
                                                              :0
                                       compr_cancelled :0
                                                              :0
      633 seconds since last clear of counters
```

When the VAM processes packets, the "packet in" and "packet out" counters change. Counter "packets out" represents the number of packets directed to the VAM. Counter "packets in" represents the number of packets received from the VAM.

Note

In versions prior to Cisco IOS Release 12.2(5)T and Cisco IOS Release 12.1(10)E, upon reboot trap configurations are lost and need to be re-entered.

Monitoring and Maintaining the VPN Acceleration Module

Use the commands below to monitor and maintain the VPN Acceleration Module:

Command	Purpose
Router# show pas isa interface	Displays the ISA interface configuration.
Router# show pas isa controller	Displays the ISA controller configuration.
Router# show pas vam interface	Verifies the VAM is currently processing crypto packets.
Router# show pas vam controller	Displays the VAM controller configuration.
Router# Show version	Displays integrated service adapter as part of the interfaces.

Configuration Examples for VPN Acceleration

Example: Configuring IKE Policies

In the following example, two IKE policies are created, with policy 15 as the highest priority, policy 20 as the next priority, and the existing default priority as the lowest priority. It also creates a preshared key to be used with policy 20 with the remote peer whose IP address is 192.168.224.33.

```
crypto isakmp policy 15
encryption 3des
hash md5
authentication rsa-sig
group 2
lifetime 5000
crypto isakmp policy 20
authentication pre-share
lifetime 10000
crypto isakmp key 1234567890 address 192.168.224.33
```

Example: Configuring IPsec Configuration

The following example shows a minimal IPsec configuration where the security associations will be established via IKE:

An IPsec access list defines which traffic to protect:

access-list 101 permit ip 10.0.0.0 0.0.0.255 10.2.2.0 0.0.0.255

A transform set defines how the traffic will be protected. In this example, transform set "myset1" uses DES encryption and SHA for data packet authentication:

crypto ipsec transform-set myset1 esp-des esp-sha

Another transform set example is "myset2," which uses Triple DES encryption and MD5 (HMAC variant) for data packet authentication:

crypto ipsec transform-set myset2 esp-3des esp-md5-hmac

A crypto map joins together the IPsec access list and transform set and specifies where the protected traffic is sent (the remote IPsec peer):

```
crypto map toRemoteSite 10 ipsec-isakmp
match address 101
set transform-set myset2
set peer 10.2.2.5
```

The crypto map is applied to an interface:

```
interface Serial0
ip address 10.0.0.2
crypto map toRemoteSite
```



Note In this example, IKE must be enabled.

Additional References for VPN Acceleration Module

Related Topic	Document Title
Cisco IOS commands	Cisco IOS Master Commands List, All Releases
Security commands	 Cisco IOS Security Command Reference Commands A to C Cisco IOS Security Command Reference Commands D to L Cisco IOS Security Command Reference Commands M to R Cisco IOS Security Command Reference Commands S to Z
IPsec configuration	Configuring IPsec
IKE configuration	Configuring IKE
VAM installation and configuration tasks	VAM Installation and Configuration Guide

Related Documents

Standards and RFCs

Standard/RFC	Title
RFC 2393	IP Payload Compression Protocol (IPComp)
RFC 2395	IP Payload Compression Using LZS
RFCs 2401 to 2411	IPsec—IKE
RFC 2451	The ESP CBC-Mode Cipher Algorithms
IPSec/IKE: RFCs 2401-2411, 2451	

MIBs

MIB	MIBs Link
• CISCO-IPSEC-FLOW-MONITOR-MIB	To locate and download MIBs for selected platforms, Cisco
• CISCO-IPSEC-MIB	software releases, and feature sets, use Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL:
• CISCO-IPSEC-POLICY-MAP-MIB	http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs

Technical Assistance

Description	Link
The Cisco Support and Documentation website provides online resources to download documentation, software, and tools. Use these resources to install and configure the software and to troubleshoot and resolve technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support and Documentation website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.	http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html

Feature Information for VPN Acceleration Module

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Feature Name	Releases	Feature Information
VPN Acceleration Module (VAM)	12.1(9)E 12.1(14)E 12.2(9)YE 12.2(13)T 12.2(15)T 12.3(1)Mainline 12.2(14)SU	VPN Acceleration Module (VAM) supports Data Encryption Standard (DES) or Triple DES (3DES) IPsec encryption at a rate greater than full-duplex DS-3 line rate (up to 145 Mbps) for site-to-site VPNs such as intranets and extranets. VAM also supports up to 5000 encrypted tunnels for mixed VPN environments that have both site-to-site and remote access VPN requirements. VAM integrates hardware-assisted Rivest, Shamir, and Adelman (RSA) and IP Payload Compression Protocol (IPPCP) layer 3 compression to accelerate RSA processing, thereby enhancing tunnel setup and improving overall VPN initialization. In environments where bandwidth is costly, VAM provides hardware-based IPPCP Lempel-Ziv-Stac (LZS) processing to compress network traffic before it is encrypted and sent over pay-per-byte WAN connections. In 12.1(9)E, this feature was introduced on the Cisco 7200 series routers on NPE-225, NPE-400, and NSE-1. In 12.1(14)E, this feature was integrated into Cisco IOS Release 12.1(14)E and support for dual VAMs ² on the Cisco 7200 series with NPE-G1 was added. In 12.2(9)YE, support for this feature was added to the Cisco 7401ASR router ³ . The following commands were introduced or modified:crypto engine sw ipsec, show pas vam controller, show pas vam
		muer lace.

Table 8: Feature Information for VPN Acceleration Module

² Support for dual VAMs is available on a Cisco 7200 series router with NPE-G1 on Cisco IOS Release 12.2(15)T, 12.1(14)E, and 12.3 Mainline only.

³ The Cisco 7401ASR router is no longer sold.

Glossary

anti-replay—Security service where the receiver can reject old or duplicate packets to protect itself against replay attacks. IPsec provides this optional service by use of a sequence number combined with the use of data authentication. Cisco IOS XE IPsec provides this service whenever it provides the data authentication service, except for manually established SAs (that is, SAs established by configuration and not by IKE).

data authentication—Verification of the integrity and origin of the data. Data authentication can refer either to integrity alone or to both of these concepts (although data origin authentication is dependent upon data integrity).

data confidentiality—Security service in which the protected data cannot be observed.

data flow—Grouping of traffic, identified by a combination of source address or mask, destination address or mask, IP next protocol field, and source and destination ports, where the protocol and port fields can have the values of **any**. IPsec protection is applied to data flows.

IKE—Internet Key Exchange. IKE establishes a shared security policy and authenticates keys for services (such as IPSec) that require keys. Before any IPSec traffic can be passed, each router/firewall/host must verify the identity of its peer. This can be done by manually entering preshared keys into both hosts or by a CA service.

IPsec—IP Security. A framework of open standards that provides data confidentiality, data integrity, and data authentication between participating peers. IPSec provides these security services at the IP layer. IPSec uses IKE to handle the negotiation of protocols and algorithms based on local policy and to generate the encryption and authentication keys to be used by IPSec. IPSec can protect one or more data flows between a pair of hosts, between a pair of security gateways, or between a security gateway and a host.

peer—In the context of this module, a "peer" is a router or other device that participates in IPsec.

PFS—perfect forward secrecy. Cryptographic characteristic associated with a derived shared secret value. With PFS, if one key is compromised, previous and subsequent keys are not compromised, because subsequent keys are not derived from previous keys.

SA—security association. Description of how two or more entities use security services in the context of a particular security protocol (AH or ESP) to communicate securely on behalf of a particular data flow. The transform and the shared secret keys are used for protecting the traffic.

SPI—security parameter index. A number which, together with a destination IP address and security protocol, uniquely identifies a particular security association. Without IKE, the SPI is manually specified for each security association.

transform—List of operations performed on a dataflow to provide data authentication, data confidentiality, and data compression. For example, one transform is the ESP protocol with the HMAC-MD5 authentication algorithm; another transform is the AH protocol with the 56-bit DES encryption algorithm and the ESP protocol with the HMAC-SHA authentication algorithm.

tunnel—In the context of this module, "tunnel" is a secure communication path between two peers, such as two routers. It does not refer to using IPsec in tunnel mode.

I



CHAPTER .

Option to Disable Hardware Crypto EngineFailover to Software Crypto Engine

The Option to Disable Hardware Crypto Engine Failover to Software Crypto Engine feature gives you the option of configuring your router so that failover to the software crypto engine does not occur even if the hardware crypto engine fails.

Note

Security threats, as well as the cryptographic technologies to help protect against them, are constantly changing. For more information about the latest Cisco cryptographic recommendations, see the Next Generation Encryption (NGE) white paper.

Feature History for Option to Disable Hardware Crypto Engine Failover to Software Crypto Engine

Release	Modification
12.3(14)T	This feature was introduced.

- Finding Feature Information, on page 147
- Prerequisites for Option to Disable Hardware Crypto Engine Failover to Software Crypto Engine, on page 148
- Information About Option to Disable Hardware Crypto Engine Failover to Software Crypto Engine, on page 148
- How to Configure Option to Disable Hardware Crypto Engine Failover to Software Crypto Engine, on page 148
- Configuration Examples for Option to Disable Hardware Crypto Engine Failover to Software Crypto Engine, on page 149
- Additional References, on page 150

Finding Feature Information

Your software release may not support all the features documented in this module. For the latest caveats and feature information, see Bug Search Tool and the release notes for your platform and software release. To find information about the features documented in this module, and to see a list of the releases in which each feature is supported, see the feature information table.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Prerequisites for Option to Disable Hardware Crypto Engine Failover to Software Crypto Engine

• You must have the Cisco IOS IP Security (IPSec) framework configured on your network.

Information About Option to Disable Hardware Crypto Engine Failover to Software Crypto Engine

Hardware Crypto Engine Failover to the Software Crypto Engine Overview

Cisco IOS IPSec traffic can be supported both by a hardware encryption engine and by a software crypto engine (that is, by the main CPU, which is running a software encryption algorithm). If the hardware encryption engine fails, the software on the main CPU attempts to perform the IPSec functions. However, the main CPU software routines have only a small percentage of bandwidth compared with those of the hardware encryption engine. If a sufficient amount of traffic is being handled by the hardware engine, it is possible that on failover, the main CPU may try to handle more traffic than it can, causing the router to fail.

Option to Disable Hardware Crypto Engine Failover

The Option to Disable Hardware Crypto Engine Failover to Software Crypto Engine feature allows you to configure your router so that the hardware crypto engine does not automatically fail over to the software crypto engine.

For situations in which you prefer that the software routines on the main CPU handle the hardware crypto engine failover, the default is that failover does occur.

How to Configure Option to Disable Hardware Crypto Engine Failover to Software Crypto Engine

Disabling Hardware Crypto Engine Failover to the Software Crypto Engine

To disable hardware crypto engine failover to the software crypto engine, perform the following steps.

SUMMARY STEPS

- 1. enable
- 2. configure terminal
- 3. no crypto engine software ipsec

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.
	Example:	• Enter your password if prompted.
	Router> enable	
Step 2	configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
	Example:	
	Router# configure terminal	
Step 3	no crypto engine software ipsec	Disables hardware crypto engine failover to the software
	Example:	crypto engine.
	Router (config)# no crypto engine software ipsec	• To reenable failover, use the crypto engine software ipsec form of this command.

Configuration Examples for Option to Disable Hardware Crypto Engine Failover to Software Crypto Engine

Disabled Hardware Crypto Engine Failover Example

The following example shows that hardware crypto engine failover to the software crypto engine has been disabled:

```
version 12.4
service timestamps debug datetime msec
service timestamps log datetime msec
no service password-encryption
hostname VPN-Gateway1
1
boot-start-marker
boot-end-marker
1
1
clock timezone EST 0
no aaa new-model
ip subnet-zero
!
1
ip audit po max-events 100
no ftp-server write-enable
1
!
no crypto engine software ipsec
1
crypto isakmp policy 10
encr aes
```

```
authentication pre-share
 group 14
crypto isakmp key cisco123 address 209.165.201.2!
1
crypto ipsec transform-set basic esp-aes esp-sha-hmac
crypto map mymap 10 ipsec-isakmp
 set peer 209.165.201.2
 set transform-set basic
match address 101
T.
1
interface Ethernet0/0
ip address 192.168.1.1 255.255.255.0
interface Serial1/0
ip address 209.165.200.2 255.255.255.252
 serial restart-delay 0
 crypto map mymap!
ip classless
ip route 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 209.165.200.1
no ip http server
no ip http secure-server
1
access-list 101 permit ip 192.168.1.0 0.0.0.255 172.16.2.0 0.0.0.255 access-list 101 remark
Crypto ACL!
1
!
control-plane
1
!
line con 0
line aux 0
line vty 0 4
1
!
end
```

Additional References

The following sections provide references to the Crypto Conditional Debug Support feature.

Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
IPSec and IKE configuration tasks	"Internet Key Exchange for IPsec VPNs "module in the <i>Cisco IOS XE</i> Security Configuration Guide: Secure Connectivity
IPSec and IKE commands	Cisco IOS Security Command Reference

Standards

Standards	Title
None	

MIBs

MIBs	MIBs Link
None	To locate and download MIBs for selected platforms, Cisco IOS XE releases, and feature sets, use Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL: http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs

RFCs

RFCs	Title
None	

Technical Assistance

Description	Link
The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies.	http://www.cisco.com/techsupport
To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds.	
Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.	

Security for VPNs with IPsec Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS Release 15M&T



RFC 430x IPsec Support

The RFC 430x IPsec Support includes features—RFC 430x IPsec Support Phase 1 and RFC 430x IPsec Support Phase 2—that implement Internet Key Exchange (IKE) and IPsec behavior as specified in RFC 4301.

- Finding Feature Information, on page 153
- Information About RFC 430x IPsec Support, on page 153
- How to Configure RFC 430x IPsec Support, on page 154
- Configuration Examples for RFC 430x IPsec Support, on page 157
- Additional References for RFC 430x IPsec Support, on page 159
- Feature Information for RFC 430x IPsec Support, on page 159

Finding Feature Information

Your software release may not support all the features documented in this module. For the latest caveats and feature information, see **Bug Search** Tool and the release notes for your platform and software release. To find information about the features documented in this module, and to see a list of the releases in which each feature is supported, see the feature information table.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Information About RFC 430x IPsec Support

RFC 430x IPsec Support Phase 1

The RFC 430x IPsec Support Phase 1 feature implements Internet Key Exchange (IKE) and IPsec behavior as specified in RFC 4301.

RFC 4301 specifies the base architecture for IPsec-compliant systems. RFC 4301 describes how to provide a set of security services for traffic at the IP layer, in both the IPv4 and IPv6 environments. The RFC 430x IPsec Support Phase 1 feature provides support for the following RFC 4301 implementations on Cisco IOS software.

• Security association (SA) lifetime—The lifetime of a security association between IPsec and Internet Key Exchange (IKE) or Internet Key Exchange Version 2 (IKEv2) must not exceed the lifetime of the authentication certificate.

- **OPAQUE selectors**—OPAQUE indicates that the corresponding selector field is not available for verification. When IKEv2 encounters an OPAQUE selector, IKEv2 skips, does not process the OPAQUE selector, and moves to next selector for policy verification.
- Explicit Congestion Notification (ECN) support—ECN is propagated when decrypting an IPsec packet thereby ensuring the packet source and destination are aware of congestion that occurs within the network.
- Fragment processing—Peers must not send Initial and noninitial fragments in the same tunnel. There must be a separate tunnel mode SA for carrying initial and noninitial fragments and separate tunnel mode SA for noninitial fragments. IPsec peers must support discarding of packets and stateful fragment checking to accommodate bypass traffic.
- Do not fragment-(DF) bit processing—DF-bit processing must be set on a per SA basis.
- **Dummy packet generation support**—It should be possible to send dummy packets via IPsec SA to encapsulate the packets when traffic is flowing via IPsec SA tunnel.

RFC 430x IPsec Support Phase 2

The RFC 430x IPsec Support Phase 2 feature provides support for the RFC 4301 implementation of encryption and decryption of Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) packets on Cisco IOS software.

ICMP error messages are sent when an ICMP error occurs. For example, when a host is not reachable, the intermediate device sends a message to the originator of the ICMP request that the host is not reachable. When an ICMP error message reaches an IPsec encryption policy, it may not be classified to match an existing SA. So, the packets are classified based on the data inside the ICMP error message. This data contains the source and destination address of the original ICMP message. If an SA is found based on the address in the ICMP error message, the SA is used. If there is no SA, an SA is created if the policy permits. For decryption, the post decrypt check is performed on the data inside the ICMP error message if a valid SA is not found.

The encryption and decryption of ICMP error messages can be verified through the encrypt and decrypt counters displayed in the output of the **show crypto ipsec sa** command.

Use the **debug crypto ipsec** and **debug crypto ipsec error** commands to view ICMP error message classification.

How to Configure RFC 430x IPsec Support

Configuring RFC 430x IPsec Support Globally

Perform this task to configure the RFC 4301 implementations globally.

SUMMARY STEPS

- 1. enable
- 2. configure terminal
- **3.** crypto ipsec security-association dummy {pps rate | seconds seconds}
- 4. crypto ipsec security-association ecn {discard | propogate}
- 5. exit

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.
	Example:	• Enter your password if prompted.
	Device> enable	
Step 2	configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
	Example:	
	Device# configure terminal	
Step 3	crypto ipsec security-association dummy {pps rate seconds seconds}	Enables the generation and transmission of dummy packets in an IPsec traffic flow.
	Example:	
	Device(config)# crypto ipsec security-association dummy seconds 5	
Step 4	crypto ipsec security-association ecn {discard propogate}	Enables the Explicit Congestion Notification (ECN) settings in an IPsec traffic flow.
	Example:	
	<pre>Device(config)# crypto ipsec security-association ecn discard</pre>	
Step 5	exit	Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged
	Example:	EXEC mode.
	<pre>Device(config-crypto-map)# exit</pre>	

Configuring RFC 430x IPsec Support Per Crypto Map

Perform this task to configure the RFC 4301 implementations per crypto map.

SUMMARY STEPS

- 1. enable
- 2. configure terminal
- **3.** crypto map map-name seq-num ipsec-isakmp
- 4. set ipsec security-association dfbit {clear | copy | set}
- 5. set ipsec security-association dummy {pps rate | seconds seconds}
- 6. set ipsec security-association ecn {discard | propogate}
- **7**. end
- 8. show crypto map ipsec sa

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example:	Enter your password if prompted.
	Device> enable	
Step 2	configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
	Example:	
	Device# configure terminal	
Step 3	crypto map map-name seq-num ipsec-isakmp	Specifies the crypto map entry to be created or modified
	Example:	and enters crypto map configuration mode.
	<pre>Device(config)# crypto map cmap 1 ipsec-isakmp</pre>	
Step 4	set ipsec security-association dfbit {clear copy set}	Enables do not fragment (DF)-bit processing per security
	Example:	association (SA) for an IPsec traffic flow in a crypto map.
	<pre>Device(config-crypto-map)# set ipsec security-association dfbit set</pre>	
Step 5	<pre>set ipsec security-association dummy {pps rate seconds seconds}</pre>	Enables the generation and transmission of dummy packets for an IPsec traffic flow in a crypto map.
	Example:	
	<pre>Device(config-crypto-map)# set ipsec security-association dummy seconds 5</pre>	
Step 6	set ipsec security-association ecn {discard propogate}	Enables the Explicit Congestion Notification (ECN) settings
	Example:	per SA for an IPsec traffic flow in a crypto map.
	Device(config-crypto-map)# set ipsec security-association ecn propogate	
Step 7	end	Exits crypto map configuration mode and returns to
	Example:	privileged EXEC mode.
	<pre>Device(config-crypto-map)# end</pre>	
Step 8	show crypto map ipsec sa	Displays the settings used by IPsec SAs.
	Example:	
	Device# show crypto map ipsec sa	

Example

The following is sample output from the **show crypto map ipsec sa** command:

Device# show crypto map ipsec sa

```
interface: Tunnel0
Crypto map tag: Tunnel0-head-0, local addr 3FFE:2002::32F7:DFF:FE54:7FD1
protected vrf: (none)
local ident (addr/mask/prot/port): (3FFE:2002::32F7:DFF:FE54:7FD1/128/47/0)
remote ident (addr/mask/prot/port): (3FFE:2002::C671:FEFF:FE88:EB82/128/47/0)
current_peer 3FFE:2002::C671:FEFF:FE88:EB82 port 500
PERMIT, flags={origin_is_acl,}
```

```
#pkts encaps: 36, #pkts encrypt: 36, #pkts digest: 36
#pkts decaps: 28, #pkts decrypt: 28, #pkts verify: 28
#pkts compressed: 0, #pkts decompressed: 0
#pkts not compressed: 0, #pkts compr. failed: 0
#pkts not decompressed: 0, #pkts decompress failed: 0
#send errors 0, #recv errors 0
#send dummy packets 852600, #recv dummy packets 424905
local crypto endpt.: 3FFE:2002::32F7:DFF:FE54:7FD1,
remote crypto endpt.: 3FFE:2002::C671:FEFF:FE88:EB82
plaintext mtu 1430, path mtu 1500, ipv6 mtu 1500, ipv6 mtu idb GigabitEthernet0/0/1
current outbound spi: 0xE963D1EC(3915633132)
PFS (Y/N): N, DH group: none
Dummy packet: Initializing
inbound esp sas:
spi: 0xF4E01B9A(4108327834)
 transform: esp-3des esp-md5-hmac,
in use settings ={Tunnel, }
conn id: 2053, flow id: ESG:53, sibling flags FFFFFF80000049, crypto map: Tunnel0-head-0
 sa timing: remaining key lifetime (k/sec): (4608000/2343)
 IV size: 8 bytes
 replay detection support: Y
Status: ACTIVE (ACTIVE)
inbound ah sas:
inbound pcp sas:
outbound esp sas:
spi: 0xE963D1EC(3915633132)
 transform: esp-3des esp-md5-hmac,
in use settings ={Tunnel, }
conn id: 2054, flow id: ESG:54, sibling flags FFFFFFF80000049, crypto map: Tunnel0-head-0
 sa timing: remaining key lifetime (k/sec): (4608000/2343)
 IV size: 8 bytes
 replay detection support: Y
 Status: ACTIVE (ACTIVE)
outbound ah sas:
outbound pcp sas:
```

Configuration Examples for RFC 430x IPsec Support

Example: Configuring RFC 430x IPsec Support Globally

The following examples shows how to configure RFC 430x IPsec Support globally:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# crypto ipsec security-association dummy seconds 15
Device(config)# crypto ipsec security-association ecn propogate
Device(config-crypto-map)# exit
```

Example: Configuring RFC 430x IPsec Support Per Crypto Map

The following examples shows how to configure RFC 430x IPsec Support per crypto map:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device (config) # crypto map cmap 1 ipsec-isakmp
Device(config-crypto-map)# set security-association copy
Device (config-crypto-map) # set security-association dummy seconds 15
Device (config-crypto-map) # set security-association ecn propogate
Device (config-crypto-map) # end
Device# show crypto map ipsec sa
interface: Tunnel0
Crypto map tag: Tunnel0-head-0, local addr 3FFE:2002::32F7:DFF:FE54:7FD1
protected vrf: (none)
local ident (addr/mask/prot/port): (3FFE:2002::32F7:DFF:FE54:7FD1/128/47/0)
remote ident (addr/mask/prot/port): (3FFE:2002::C671:FEFF:FE88:EB82/128/47/0)
current peer 3FFE:2002::C671:FEFF:FE88:EB82 port 500
PERMIT, flags={origin is acl,}
#pkts encaps: 36, #pkts encrypt: 36, #pkts digest: 36
#pkts decaps: 28, #pkts decrypt: 28, #pkts verify: 28
#pkts compressed: 0, #pkts decompressed: 0
#pkts not compressed: 0, #pkts compr. failed: 0
#pkts not decompressed: 0, #pkts decompress failed: 0
#send errors 0, #recv errors 0
#send dummy packets 852600, #recv dummy packets 424905
local crypto endpt.: 3FFE:2002::32F7:DFF:FE54:7FD1,
remote crypto endpt.: 3FFE:2002::C671:FEFF:FE88:EB82
plaintext mtu 1430, path mtu 1500, ipv6 mtu 1500, ipv6 mtu idb GigabitEthernet0/0/1
current outbound spi: 0xE963D1EC(3915633132)
PFS (Y/N): N, DH group: none
Dummy packet: Initializing
inbound esp sas:
spi: 0xF4E01B9A(4108327834)
 transform: esp-3des esp-md5-hmac,
in use settings ={Tunnel, }
conn id: 2053, flow id: ESG:53, sibling flags FFFFFF800000049, crypto map: Tunnel0-head-0
sa timing: remaining key lifetime (k/sec): (4608000/2343)
 IV size: 8 bytes
 replay detection support: Y
Status: ACTIVE (ACTIVE)
inbound ah sas:
inbound pcp sas:
outbound esp sas:
spi: 0xE963D1EC(3915633132)
transform: esp-3des esp-md5-hmac,
in use settings ={Tunnel, }
conn id: 2054, flow id: ESG:54, sibling flags FFFFFF80000049, crypto map: Tunnel0-head-0
sa timing: remaining key lifetime (k/sec): (4608000/2343)
IV size: 8 bytes
replay detection support: Y
Status: ACTIVE (ACTIVE)
outbound ah sas:
```

L

outbound pcp sas:

Additional References for RFC 430x IPsec Support

Related Topic	Document Title
Cisco IOS Commands	Cisco IOS Master Command List, All Releases
Security commands	Cisco IOS Security Command Reference Commands A to C
	Cisco IOS Security Command Reference Commands D to L
	Cisco IOS Security Command Reference Commands M to R
	Cisco IOS Security Command Reference Commands S to Z
IKEv2 configuration	Configuring Internet Key Exchange Version 2 (IKEv2) and FlexVPN Site-to-Site
Recommended cryptographic algorithms	Next Generation Encryption

Related Documents

Standards and RFCs

Standard/RFC	Title
RFC 4301	Security Architecture for the Internet Protocol

Technical Assistance

Description	Link
The Cisco Support and Documentation website provides online resources to download documentation, software, and tools. Use these resources to install and configure the software and to troubleshoot and resolve technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support and Documentation website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.	http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html

Feature Information for RFC 430x IPsec Support

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Table 9: Feature Information	for RFC430x IPsec Supp	oort
------------------------------	------------------------	------

Feature Name	Releases	Feature Information
RFC430x IPsec Support Phase 1	15.4(2)T	The RFC 430x IPsec Support Phase 1 feature implements Internet Key Exchange (IKE) and IPsec behavior as specified in RFC 4301.
		The following commands were introduced or modified: crypto ipsec security-association dummy, crypto ipsec security-association ecn, set ipsec security-association dfbit, set ipsec security-association dummy, set ipsec security-association ecn, show crypto map ipsec sa.
RFC430x IPsec Support Phase 2	15.5(2)T	The RFC 430x IPsec Support Phase 2 feature provides support for the RFC 4301 implementation of encryption and decryption of Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) packets on Cisco IOS software. No commands were modified or updated for this feature.

Security for VPNs with IPsec Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS Release 15M&T



Session Initiation Protocol Triggered VPN

Session Initiation Protocol Triggered VPN (SIP-Triggered VPN or VPN-SIP) is a service offered by service providers where a VPN is set up using Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) for on-demand media or application sharing between peers. The VPN-SIP feature defines the process in which two SIP user agents resolve each other's IP addresses, exchange the fingerprints of their self-signed certificates, third-party certificates, or pre-shared key securely, and agree to establish an IPsec-based VPN.

Service providers offer the VPN-SIP service to their customers that have SIP-based services such as bank ATMs or branches. This VPN-SIP service replaces an ISDN connection for backup network functionality. If the primary broadband service link goes down, these bank ATMs or branches connect to their central headend or data centres through the VPN-SIP service.

The SIP server of the service provider, which coordinates the VPN-SIP service, is also used for billing of the service based on the time the service is used.

- Information about VPN-SIP, on page 161
- Prerequisites for VPN-SIP, on page 166
- Restrictions for VPN-SIP, on page 166
- How to Configure VPN-SIP, on page 167
- Configuration Examples for VPN-SIP, on page 173
- Troubleshooting for VPN-SIP, on page 174
- Additional References for VPN-SIP, on page 181
- Feature Information for VPN-SIP, on page 182

Information about VPN-SIP

Components for VPN-SIP Solution

VPN-SIP uses IPSec Static Virtual Tunnel Interface (SVTI). IPSec SVTI stays in active (UP) state even when there is no IPSec security association (SA) established between the tunnel interface and the SVTI peer.

The following are three components for the VPN-SIP Solution:

- SIP
- VPN-SIP

• Crypto (IP Security (IPsec), Internet Key Exchange (IKE), Tunnel Protection (TP), Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) modules within crypto)

Sesssion Initiation Protocol

SIP is used as a name resolution mechanism to initiate an IKE session. VPN-SIP uses SIP service to establish a VPN connection to a home or a small business router that does not have a fixed IP address. This connection is achieved using self-signed certificates or pre-shared keys. SIP negotiates the use of IKE for media sessions in the Session Description Protocol (SDP) offer-and-answer model.

SIP is statically configured. One tunnel interface must be configured for each remote SIP number.

SIP also provides billing capabilities for service providers to charge customers based on the SIP number, for using the VPN-SIP service. Billing based on SIP numbers happens in the service provider network and is independent of the end devices like Cisco VPN-SIP routers.

VPN-SIP Solution

VPN-SIP is the central block that coordinates between SIP and Crypto modules, and provides an abstraction between them.

When traffic destined to a remote network behind a SIP number is routed to the tunnel interface, the IPSec control plane gets a trigger from packet switching path as there is no IPSEC SA configured to that peer. IPsec control plane passes the trigger to VPN-SIP as the tunnel is configured for VPN-SIP.



Note

e Static routes for remote networks for that SIP number must be configured to point to that tunnel interface.

When the VPN-SIP service is triggered, SIP sets up the call with a SIP phone number pair. SIP also passes incoming call details to the VPN-SIP and negotiates IKE media sessions using local address and fingerprint information of the local self-signed certificate or pre-shared key. SIP also passes remote address and fingerprint information to VPN-SIP.

The VPN-SIP service listens to tunnel status updates and invokes SIP to tear down the SIP session. The VPN-SIP service also provides a means to display current and active sessions.

Feature at a glance

The following steps summarize how the VPN-SIP feature works:

- IP SLA monitors the primary link using route tracking. When the primary link fails IP SLA detects this failure.
- Once the primary path fails, IP SLA switches the default route to the higher metric route that is configured on the router.
- When relevant traffic tries to flow using the secondary link, SIP sends an invite message to the SIP server to obtain the VPN peer information.
- The router receives the VPN peer information (IP address, local and remote SIP numbers, IKE port, and finger print) and it establishes VPN-SIP tunnel.

• When the primary path comes back up, IP SLA detects the primary path and the route falls back to the original path. When the idle timer expires, IPSec is torn down and a SIP call is disconnected.

Following is the topology for the VPN-SIP solution:

Figure 9: VPN-SIP Topology



SIP Call Flow

The SIP call flow is divided into initiation at the local peer and call receipt at the remote peer.

At SIP Call Intitiation

When packets are routed to an SVTI interface in data plane, the SIP call must be placed to the peer SIP number to resolve its address, so that VPN tunnel can be brought up.

- When local auth-type is PSK, IKEv2 finds the matching key for a peer SIP number. The IKEv2 keyring must be configured with id_key_id type (string) as SIP number for each SIP peer. IKEv2 computes the fingerprint of the looked-up key and passes it to VPN-SIP.
- When local auth-type is a self-signed certificate or an third-party certificate, IKEv2 computes the fingerprint of the local certificate configured under the IKEv2 profile and passes it to the VPN-SIP

The VPN-SIP module interacts with SIP to setup SIP call to the peer. When the call is successful, VPN-SIP sets the tunnel destination of SVTI to the resolved IP address, requesting SVTI to initiate the VPN tunnel.



Note When a wildcard key is required, use the authentication local pre-share key command and the authentication remote pre-share key command in IKEv2 profile.

When SIP call is received at the remote peer

When a SIP call is received from a peer, following interactions occur between various crypto modules:

- The Tunnel Protection helps VPN-SIP module to set tunnel destination address.
- IKEv2 returns local auth-type (PSK or PKI) and local fingerprint to the VPN-SIP module. When local auth-type is PSK, IKEv2 finds a matching key for a corresponding SIP number.



Note IKEv2 only knows peer by its SIP number.

During the SIP call negotiation between peers, each peer must select a unique local IKEv2 port number to be exchanged over the SDP. To support different port numbers for each session, the VPN-SIP module programmatically configures IP Port Address Translation (PAT) to translate between IKEv2 port (4500) and the port number exchanged over SDP. For the translation to work IP NAT must be configured on secondary link and the loopback interface configured as the VPN-SIP tunnel source. The lifetime of the translation is limited to the lifetime of the VPN-SIP session.

SDP Offer and Answer

Following is the sample for SDP offer and answer that is negotiated in the SIP call as defined in RFC 6193:

```
offer SDP
      . . .
      m=application 50001 udp ike-esp-udpencap
      c=IN IP4 10.6.6.49
      a=ike-setup:active
      a=fingerprint:SHA-1 \
      b=AS:512
      4A:AD:B9:B1:3F:82:18:3B:54:02:12:DF:3E:5D:49:6B:19:E5:7C:AB
      . . .
   answer SDP
      m=application 50002 udp ike-esp-udpencap
      c=IN IP4 10.6.6.50
      a=ike-setup:passive
      a=fingerprint:SHA-1 \
      b=AS:512
      D2:9F:6F:1E:CD:D3:09:E8:70:65:1A:51:7C:9D:30:4F:21:E4:4A:8E
```

As part of the SDP negotiation, both peers negotiate the maximum bandwidth rate for the VPN-SIP session using the b=AS :number SDP attribute. if the peers mention different bandwidth numbers in their SDP, both of them should honor the minimum value as the maximum bandwidth. If b=AS :number SDP attribute is missing in the offer or answer, the SIP call is not successfully set up.

The negotiated maximum bandwidth is applied on the SVTI tunnel interface through the programmatically configured QoS policy in the output direction. The programmatically configured QoS policy is not applied and session fails, if there is a pre-existing statically configured policy.

Once SIP call is complete and address of the peer is resolved, VPN-SIP sets tunnel destination of SVTI and sends a request to initiate tunnel.

IKEv2 Negotiation

Following is the process for IKEv2 Security Session (SA) negotiation:

- Before starting the session, IKEv2 checks with VPN-SIP if the session is a VPN-SIP session.
- If it's a VPN-SIP session and local auth-type is PSK, IKEv2 looks up the PSK key pair using SIP number of the peer instead of IP address of the peer.
- For validating self-signed certificate, IKEv2 checks if the certificate is self-signed and validates the certificate.
 - In addition to existing AUTH payload validation as part of IKEv2 protocol, IKEv2 calculates hash
 of the received certificate or looked-up PSK and compares with the fingerprint from SIP negotiation
 that IKEv2 queries from VPN-SIP module. Only if the fingerprint matches, IKEv2 considers
 authentication of peer is valid. If not, IKEv2 declares that peer has failed to authenticate and fails
 the VPN session.

VPN-SIP solution depends on IPSEC idle timer to detect that traffic is no longer routed over the backup VPN. The idle-time configuration under the IPSec Profile is mandatory for session to be disconnected when there is no traffic. 120 seconds is the recommended time.

VPN-SIP and SIP coordinate to tear down SIP call.

When IPsec idle time expires the VPN-SIP module informs the IKEv2 to bring down the IPsec tunnel. VPN-SIP requests the SIP module to disconnect the SIP call, without waiting for confirmation from the IKEv2.

When SIP call disconnect is received from the peer, VPN-SIP module informs the IKEv2 to bring down the IPsec tunnel, and acknowledges to SIP to tear down the SIP call.

Supported Platforms

The VPN-SIP feature is supported on the following platforms:

Cisco Integrated Services Router Generation 2 (ISR G2) 800 Series platforms

- C819H-K9
- C841M-8X-JAIS/K9
- C881-K9
- C891FJ-K9
- C891-24X/K9
- C892FSP-K9
- C897VA-K9
- C899G-LTE-JP-K9
- C899G-LTE-LA-K9
- C819G-LTE-LA-K9
- C819GW-LTE-LA-QK9

Prerequisites for VPN-SIP

- Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers and Cisco 1000 Integrated Services Routers must have Cisco IOS XE 16.8.1 software installed.
- Security K9 license must be enabled on the router.
- The routers must have a minimum memory of 1 GB.
- For the SIP register request of the SIP User Agent to succeed, the SIP registrar must be available to the VPN-SIP routers.
- The DHCP server must support option 120 and 125 to obtain the SIP server address, which is needed for registration and establishing the SIP session.
- Proper routing configurations must be completed to ensure backup WAN path is used when primary path is down.
- Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) of the tunnel interface must be less than the MTU of the secondary WAN interface.
- When self-signed or third-party certificates are used for IKEv2 authentication, configure IKEv2 fragmentation on the VPN-SIP router to avoid fragmentation at the IP layer.
- NAT SIP ALG must be disabled.
- Caller ID notification service must be configured in the network.

Restrictions for VPN-SIP

- VPN-SIP and CUBE/SIP gateway cannot be configured on the same device. When CUBE license is active on the device, only CUBE will be functional.
- Only IPv4 is supported for transport and media (IPv4 transport for SIP registration, SIP signaling, and IPv4 packets encrypted over IPv4 transport).
- SIP signalling with peer devices behind NAT is not supported (ICE and STUN are not supported.
- SIP negotiation is supported only in global VRF.
- Remote-access VPN features like private address assignment, configuration mode exchange (CP payloads), routes exchange, are not supported.
- Routing protocols over the VPN-SIP session are not supported.
- Only Rivest-Shamir-Addleman (RSA) server self-signed certificates are supported.
- Pre-shared key lookup functionality using authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) is not supported.
- The IPSec idle timer is configured per IPSec profile using the ipsec-profile command. The idle time is the same for all VPN-SIP sessions that use a specific IPSec profile.

- Track objects that are used for IPSLA monitoring, have a maximum limit of 1000 objects in Cisco IOS software. When one track object is used to track one peer router, maximum number of VPN-SIP sessions that one IOS device can have is limited by the maximum number of track objects.
- Only one local SIP number is supported on Cisco IOS software.
- If there is a pre-existing statically configured policy, the programmatically configured QoS policy is not applied and session fails, . Remove any statically configured QoS policy on the SVTI interface.
- Cisco does not support the interoperability with VPN-SIP implementation of other vendors.

How to Configure VPN-SIP

Configuring VPN-SIP

The following steps describe the process of configuring VPN-SIP:

- 1. Configure the tunnel authentication using third party certificates, self-signed certificates, or pre-shared keys.
 - 1. Tunnel Authentication using Certificates

Configure a trustpoint to obtain a certificate from a certification authority (CA) server that is located in the customer's network. This is required for tunnel authentication. Use the following configuration:

```
peerl(config) # crypto pki trustpoint CA
enrollment url http://10.45.18.132/
serial-number none
subject-name CN=peer2
revocation-check crl
rsakevpair peer2
peer2(config) # crypto pki authenticate CA
Certificate has the following attributes:
      Fingerprint MD5: F38A9B4C 2D80490C F8E7581B BABE7CBD
      Fingerprint SHA1: 4907CC36 B1957258 5DFE23B2 649E7DDA 99BDB7C3
% Do you accept this certificate? [yes/no]: yes
Trustpoint CA certificate accepted.
peer2(config)#crypto pki enroll CA
% Start certificate enrollment ..
% Create a challenge password. You will need to verbally provide this
  password to the CA Administrator in order to revoke your certificate.
   For security reasons your password will not be saved in the configuration.
   Please make a note of it.
Password:
Re-enter password:
% The subject name in the certificate will include: CN=peer2
% The subject name in the certificate will include: peer2
% Include an IP address in the subject name? [no]:
Request certificate from CA? [yes/no]: yes
% Certificate request sent to Certificate Authority
% The 'show crypto pki certificate verbose CA' command will show the fingerprint.
Certificate map for Trustpoint
crypto pki certificate map data 1
issuer-name co cn = orange
```

2. Tunnel authentication using self-signed certificate

Configure a PKI trust point to generate a self-signed certificate on the device, when authenticating using a self-signed certificate. Use the following configuration:

```
peer4(config)#crypto pki trustpoint Self
    enrollment selfsigned
    revocation-check none
    rsakeypair myRSA
    exit
crypto pki enroll Self
Do you want to continue generating a new Self Signed Certificate? [yes/no]: yes
% Include the router serial number in the subject name? [yes/no]: yes
```

% Include an IP address in the subject name? [no]: no Generate Self Signed Router Certificate? [yes/no]: yes

Router Self Signed Certificate successfully created

3. Configure tunnel authentication using a pre-shared key

```
crypto ikev2 keyring keys
peer peer1
identity key-id 1234
pre-shared-key key123
```

2. 1. Configure IKEv2 Profile for Certificate

```
crypto ikev2 profile IPROF
match certificate data
identity local key-id 5678
authentication remote rsa-sig
authentication local rsa-sig
keyring local keys
pki trustpoint self
nat force-encap
```

2. Configure an IKEv2 Profile for pre-shared keys

```
crypto ikev2 profile IPROF
match identity remote any
identity local key-id 5678
authentication remote pre-share
authentication local pre-share
keyring local keys
nat force-encap
```

Note To complete the IKEv2 SA configuration, the **nat force-encap** command must be configured on both peers. Since, UDP encapsulation is negotiated in SDP, IKEv2 must start and continue on port 4500.

3. Configure an IPsec profile

crypto ipsec profile IPROF set security-association idle-time 2000

4. Configure a LAN side interface



Note The LAN side interface is connected to the ISRG2 interface on the router.

5. Configure a loopback interface

The loopback interface is used as the source interface for the secondary VPN tunnel.

```
interface loopback 1
    ip address 10.11.1.1 255.0.0.0
    ip nat inside
```

6. Configure a secondary interface.

Note Make sure the secondary interface is configured to receive the IP address, SIP server address, and vendor specific information via DHCP.

```
interface GigabitEthernet8
    ip dhcp client request sip-server-address
    ip dhcp client request vendor-identifying-specific
    ip address dhcp
    ip nat outside
```

7. Configure the tunnel interface

```
interface Tunnel1
    ip address 10.3.2.1 255.255.255.255
    load-interval 30
    tunnel source Loopback1
    tunnel mode ipsec ipv4
    tunnel destination dynamic
    tunnel protection ipsec profile IPROF ikev2-profile IPROF
    vpn-sip local-number 5678 remote-number 1234 bandwidth 1000
```

Use the **vpn-sip local-number** *local-number* **remote-number** *remote-number* **bandwidth** *bw-number* command to configure the sVTI interface for VPN-SIP. Bandwidth is the maximum data transmission rate that must be negotiated with this peer and the negotiated value is set on the tunnel interface. Allowed values are 64, 512, and 1000 kbps.

Once an SVTI is configured for VPN-SIP, changes cannot be made to tunnel mode, tunnel destination, tunnel source, and tunnel protection. To change the mode, source, destination, or tunnel protection you must remove the VPN-SIP configuration from the SVTI interface.

8. Add static default routes

Add a secondary route with a higher metric.

ip route 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 Tunnel0 track 1 ip route 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 Tunnel1 254

9. Configure IP SLA

```
ip sla 1
         icmp-echo 10.11.11.1
         threshold 500
         timeout 500
         frequency 2
        ip sla schedule 1 life forever start-time now
```

10. Configure route tracking

track 1 ip sla 1 reachability

11. Enable VPN-SIP

```
vpn-sip enable
vpn-sip local-number 5678 address ipv4 GigabitEthernet8
vpn-sip tunnel source Loopback1
vpn-sip logging
```

To configure VPN-SIP, you must configure local SIP number and local address. The **vpn-sip** local-number SIP-number address ipv4 WAN-interface-name command configures the local SIP number that is used for SIP call and the associated IPv4 address.

Note Only IPv4 addresses can be configured. Crypto module does not support dual stack.

· Backup WAN interface address may change based on DHCP assignment.

When the primary WAN interface is functional, the destination of the VPN-SIP tunnel is set to the backup WAN interface, so that the tunnel interface is active. Destination is set to IP address of the peer that is learnt from SDP of SIP negotiation when traffic is routed to the tunnel interface. When primary WAN interface fails and the back routes are activated, packets are routed to the sVTI through backup.

Note

We recommend that you use an unused non-routable address as the address of the loopback interface and do not configure this loopback interface for any other purpose. Once a loopback interface is configured, VPN-SIP listens to any updates to the interface and blocks them. The **vpn-sip logging** command enables the system logging of VPN-SIP module for events, such as session up, down, or failure.

Verifying VPN-SIP on a Local Router

Verifying Registration Status

```
Peer1# show vpn-sip registration-status
SIP registration of local number 0388881001 : registered 10.6.6.50
Verifying SIP Registrar
Peerl#show vpn-sip sip registrar
                                                                      call-id
Line
              destination
                               expires(sec) contact transport
0388881001
                                  2359
                                              10.6.6.50 UDP
```

example.com

3176F988-9EAA11E7-8002AFA0-8EF41435
Verifying VPN-SIP Status

```
Peerl#show vpn-sip session detail
VPN-SIP session current status
Interface: Tunnell
Session status: SESSION_UP (I)
Uptime : 00:00:42
Remote number : 0388881001 =====> This is the Remote Router's SIP number
Local number : 038882001 ====> Local router's SIP number
Remote address:port: 10.6.6.49:50002
Local address:port : 10.6.6.50:50001
Crypto conn handle: 0x8000017D
SIP Handle : 0x800000C7
SIP callID : 1554
Configured/Negotiated bandwidth: 64/64 kbps
```

Verifying Crypto Session

```
Peer1# show crypto session detail
Crypto session current status
Code: C - IKE Configuration mode, D - Dead Peer Detection
K - Keepalives, N - NAT-traversal, T - cTCP encapsulation
X - IKE Extended Authentication, F - IKE Fragmentation
R - IKE Auto Reconnect, U - IKE Dynamic Route Update
S - SIP Vpn-sip
Interface: Tunnel1
Profile: IPROF
Uptime: 00:03:53
Session status: UP-ACTIVE
Peer: 10.6.6.49 port 4500 fvrf: (none) ivrf: (none)
     Phase1 id: 10.6.6.49
     Desc: (none)
  Session ID: 43
  IKEv2 SA: local 10.11.1.1/4500 remote 10.6.6.49/50002 Active
          Capabilities:S connid:1 lifetime:23:56:07 ===> Capabilities:S indicates this is
 a SIP VPN SIP Session
  IPSEC FLOW: permit ip 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0 0.0.0/0.0.0.0
        Active SAs: 2, origin: crypto map
        Inbound: #pkts dec'ed 6 drop 0 life (KB/Sec) 4222536/3366
        Outbound: #pkts enc'ed 4 drop 0 life (KB/Sec) 4222537/3366
```

Verifying IP NAT Translations

Peerl#sh ip nat translationsPro Inside globalInside localOutside localOutside globaludp 2.2.2.2:450010.6.6.50:5000110.6.6.49:5000210.6.6.49:50002

Verifying DHCP SIP Configuration

```
Peer9#show vpn-sip sip dhcp
SIP DHCP Info
SIP-DHCP interface: GigabitEthernet8
SIP server address:
Domain name: dns:example.com
```

Verifying VPN-SIP on a Remote Router

Verifying VPN-SIP Registration Status on a Remote Router

```
Peer2# show vpn-sip registration-status
SIP registration of local number 0388882001 : registered 10.6.6.49
```

Verifying VPN-SIP Registrar on a Remote Router

Verifying VPN-SIP Session Details on a Remote Router

```
Peer2# show vpn-sip session detail
VPN-SIP session current status
Interface: Tunnel1
  Session status: SESSION UP (R)
  Uptime
               : 00:00:21
  Remote number : 0388882001 ====> This is the Peerl Router's SIP number
  Local number : 0388881001 ====> Local router's SIP number
  Remote address:port: 10.6.6.50:50001
  Local address:port : 10.6.6.49:50002
  Crypto conn handle: 0x8000017E
  SIP Handle
                   : 0x800000BE
  SIP callID
                    : 1556
  Configured/Negotiated bandwidth: 1000/64 kbps
```

Verifying Crypto Session Details on a Remote Router

```
Peer2 #show crypto session detail
Crypto session current status
Code: C - IKE Configuration mode, D - Dead Peer Detection
K - Keepalives, N - NAT-traversal, T - cTCP encapsulation
X - IKE Extended Authentication, F - IKE Fragmentation
R - IKE Auto Reconnect, U - IKE Dynamic Route Update
S - SIP VPN-SIP
Interface: Tunnel1
Profile: IPROF
Uptime: 00:02:32
Session status: UP-ACTIVE
Peer: 10.6.6.50 port 50001 fvrf: (none) ivrf: (none)
      Phase1 id: 10.6.6.50
     Desc: (none)
  Session ID: 147
 IKEv2 SA: local 10.17.1.1/4500 remote 10.6.6.50/50001 Active
         Capabilities: S connid: 1 lifetime: 23:57:28 ====> Capabilities: S indicates this is
 a SIP VPN-SIP Session
 IPSEC FLOW: permit ip 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0
        Active SAs: 2, origin: crypto map
        Inbound: #pkts dec'ed 4 drop 0 life (KB/Sec) 4293728/3448
        Outbound: #pkts enc'ed 6 drop 0 life (KB/Sec) 4293728/3448
```

Verifying IP NAT Translations on a Remote Router

Peer	r2#show	ip nat	translations		
Pro	Inside	global	Inside local	Outside local	Outside global
udp	3.3.3.3	3:4500	10.6.6.49:50002	10.6.6.50:50001	10.6.6.50:50001

Configuration Examples for VPN-SIP

Configuration Examples for VPN-SIP

Using self-signed certificates for authentication

The following is sample configuration to configure VPN-SIP using self-signed certificates for authentication. There is no distinction between initiator and responder role in VPN-SIP. The configuration on a peer node will be identical with local SIP numbers changed.

```
// Self-signed certificate
crypto pki trustpoint selfCert
  rsakeypair myRSA
 enrollment selfsigned
 revocation-check none
Т
crypto ikev2 profile vpn-sip-profile
match identity remote any
authentication local rsa-sig
authentication remote rsa-sig
pki trustpoint selfCert // Use same self-signed trustpoint for sign and verify
nat force-encap
crypto ipsec profile vpn-sip-ipsec
set security-association idle-time 120
!
vpn-sip enable
vpn-sip local-number 0388883001 address ipv4 GigabitEthernet1
vpn-sip tunnel source Loopback11
vpn-sip logging
// one tunnel per peer - configuration is for peer with a SIP-number of 0388884001
int tunnel0
ip unnumbered loopback 0
 tunnel source loopback11
 tunnel mode ipsec ipv4
tunnel destination dynamic
 tunnel protection ipsec profile vpn-sip-ipsec ikev2-profile vpn-sip-profile
vpn-sip local-number 0388883001 remote-number 0388884001 bandwidth 1000
1
// ip unnumbered of tunnel interfaces
int loopback 0
 ip address 10.21.1.1 255.255.255.255
1
int loopback11
ip address 10.9.9.9 255.255.255.255
ip nat inside
// one tunnel per peer - this is for peer with SIP-number 0388885001
int tunnel1
ip unnumbered loopback 0
 tunnel source loopback11
```

```
tunnel mode ipsec ipv4
tunnel destination dynamic
tunnel protection ipsec profile vpn-sip-ipsec ikev2-profile iprof
vpn-sip sip-local 0388883001 sip-remote 0388885001 bandwidth 1000
!
interface GigabitEthernet8
ip dhcp client request sip-server-address
ip dhcp client request vendor-identifying-specific
ip address dhcp
ip nat outside
// backup routes configured with higher AD so that these routes will be activated only when
primary path goes down. AD need to be chosen to be greater than that of primary route.
ip route 10.0.00 255.0.0.0 tunnel 0 250
ip route 10.1.0.0 255.0.0.0 tunnel 0 250
ip route 10.2.0.0 255.0.0.0 tunnel 0 250
```

Troubleshooting for VPN-SIP

Viewing Tunnel Interface in Show Output

ip route 10.3.0.0 255.0.0.0 tunnel 0 250

Symptom

Show VPN-SIP session doesn't show any information about the tunnel interface. In the following example, information about the tunnel interface, tunnel1 is not shown:

```
Peer5-F#show vpn-sip session
VPN-SIP session current status
Interface: Tunnel2
   Session status: READY TO CONNECT
   Remote number : 0334563333
   Local number : 0623458888
   Remote address:port: 0.0.0.0:0
   Local address:port : 192.30.18.22:0
Interface: Tunnel3
   Session status: READY TO CONNECT
   Remote number : 0323452222
   Local number : 0623458888
   Remote address:port: 0.0.0.0:0
   Local address:port : 192.30.18.22:0
Interface: Tunnel4
   Session status: READY TO CONNECT
   Remote number : 0612349999
   Local number : 0623458888
   Remote address:port: 0.0.0.0:0
   Local address:port : 192.30.18.22:0
Interface: Tunnel6
   Session status: READY TO CONNECT
   Remote number : 0634567777
   Local number : 0623458888
   Remote address:port: 0.0.0.0:0
   Local address:port : 172.30.18.22:0
```

Possible Cause

VPN-SIP is not configured on the tunnel interface

```
Peer5-F#sh run int tun1
Building configuration...
Current configuration : 201 bytes
!
interface Tunnel1
  ip address 10.5.5.5 255.0.0.0
  tunnel source Loopback11
  tunnel mode ipsec ipv4
   tunnel destination dynamic
   tunnel protection ipsec profile test-prof ikev2-profile test
end
```

Recommended Action

Configure VPN-SIP on the tunnel interface.

```
:

Peer5-F#show running interface tunnel 1

Building configuration...

Current configuration : 278 bytes

!

interface Tunnel1

ip address 10.5.5.5 255.255.255

tunnel source Loopback11

tunnel mode ipsec ipv4

tunnel destination dynamic

tunnel protection ipsec profile test-prof ikev2-profile test

vpn-sip local-number 0623458888 remote-number 0312341111 bandwidth 1000

end
```

Following is the running output for the above scenario:

```
Peer5-F#show vpn-sip session detail
VPN-SIP session current status
Interface: Tunnell
   Session status: READY TO CONNECT
  Remote number : 0312341111
  Local number : 0623458888
  Remote address:port: 0.0.0.0:0
  Local address:port : 172.30.18.22:0
  Crypto conn handle: 0x8000002C
  SIP Handle : 0x0
  SIP callID
                    : --
  Configured/Negotiated bandwidth: 1000/0 kbps
Interface: Tunnel2
  Session status: READY TO CONNECT
  Remote number : 0334563333
  Local number : 0623458888
  Remote address:port: 0.0.0.0:0
  Local address:port : 172.30.18.22:0
  Crypto conn handle: 0x80000012
  SIP Handle : 0x0
  SIP callID
                    : --
  Configured/Negotiated bandwidth: 512/0 kbps
Interface: Tunnel3
   Session status: READY TO CONNECT
```

```
Remote number : 0323452222
  Local number : 0623458888
  Remote address:port: 0.0.0.0:0
  Local address:port : 172.30.18.22:0
  Crypto conn handle: 0x80000031
              : 0x0
  SIP Handle
  SIP callID
                    : --
  Configured/Negotiated bandwidth: 512/0 kbps
Interface: Tunnel4
  Session status: READY TO CONNECT
  Remote number : 0612349999
  Local number : 0623458888
  Remote address:port: 0.0.0.0:0
  Local address:port : 172.30.18.22:0
  Crypto conn handle: 0x8000002F
              : 0x0
  SIP Handle
  SIP callID
                    : --
  Configured/Negotiated bandwidth: 1000/0 kbps
Interface: Tunnel6
  Session status: READY TO CONNECT
  Remote number : 0634567777
  Local number : 0623458888
  Remote address:port: 0.0.0.0:0
  Local address:port : 172.30.18.22:0
  Crypto conn handle: 0x80000026
  SIP Handle
              : 0x0
  SIP callID
                    : --
  Configured/Negotiated bandwidth: 1000/0 kbps
```

Troubleshooting SIP Registration Status

Symptom

SIP registration status is Not Registered

```
Peer5#show vpn-sip sip registrar
Line destination expires(sec) contact
transport call-id
```

Peer5-F#show vpn-sip registration-status

SIP registration of local number 06234588888 : not registered

Possible Cause

IP address is not configured on the WAN interface.

Peer5#show ip interface brief				
Interface	IP-Address	OK? Method	Status	Protocol
GigabitEthernet0/0	unassigned	YES unset	down	down
GigabitEthernet0/1	unassigned	YES unset	up	up
GigabitEthernet0/2	unassigned	YES unset	down	down
GigabitEthernet0/3	unassigned	YES unset	down	down
GigabitEthernet0/4	unassigned	YES unset	up	up
GigabitEthernet0/5	10.5.5.5	YES manual	up	up
Vlan1	10.45.1.5	YES NVRAM	up	up
NVIO	10.1.1.1	YES unset	up	up
Loopback1	10.1.1.1	YES NVRAM	up	up
Loopback5	10.5.5.5	YES NVRAM	administratively down	down
Loopback11	10.11.11.11	YES NVRAM	up	up
Tunnel1	10.5.5.5	YES NVRAM	up	down

down

down

down

down

Tunnel2 10.2.2.2 YES NVRAM up 10.3.3.3 YES NVRAM up Tunnel3 Tunnel4 10.4.4.4 YES NVRAM up Tunnel6 10.8.8.8 YES NVRAM up Peer5-F#show run interface gigabitEthernet 0/4 Building configuration ... Current configuration : 213 bytes 1 interface GigabitEthernet0/4 ip dhcp client request sip-server-address ip dhcp client request vendor-identifying-specific ====> no IP address no ip address ip nat outside ip virtual-reassembly in duplex auto speed auto end

Recommended Action

Use the ip address dhcp command to configure the interface IP address.

```
Peer5-F#show running-config interface gigabitEthernet 0/4
Building configuration...
Current configuration : 215 bytes
interface GigabitEthernet0/4
ip dhcp client request sip-server-address
ip dhcp client request vendor-identifying-specific
                 ====> configure IP address DHCP
 ip address dhcp
 ip nat outside
ip virtual-reassembly in
 duplex auto
speed auto
end
Peer5-F#show ip interface brief
Interface
                   IP-Address OK? Method Status
                                                                        Protocol
GigabitEthernet0/0
                       unassigned YES unset down
                                                                        down
                       unassigned
                                        YES unset up
GigabitEthernet0/1
                                                                        up
                       unassigned YES unset up
unassigned YES unset down
unassigned YES unset down
GigabitEthernet0/2
                                                                        down
GigabitEthernet0/3
                                                                        down
GigabitEthernet0/4
                        172.30.18.22 YES DHCP up
                                                                       up
                        10.5.5.5 YES manual up
10.45.1.5 YES NVRAM up
GigabitEthernet0/5
                                                                       up
                                       YES NVRAM up
YES unset up
Vlan1
                                                                        up
                        10.1.1.1
10.1.1.1
NVT 0
                                                                        up
                                     YES NVRAM up
YES NVRAM administratively down down
up
                                        YES NVRAM up
Loopback1
Loopback5
                        10.5.5.5
                        10.11.11.11 YES NVRAM up
Loopback11
                                        YES NVRAM up
Tunnel1
                        10.6.5.5
                                                                        down
                         10.2.2.2
                                         YES NVRAM up
Tunnel2
                                                                        down
                                        YES NVRAM up
                        10.3.3.3
Tunnel3
                                                                        down
                                        YES NVRAM up
Tunnel4
                        10.4.4.4
                                                                        down
Tunnel6
                        10.8.8.8
                                        YES NVRAM up
                                                                        down
Peer5-F#show vpn-sip sip registrar
Line
            destination expires(sec) contact
Line destinat:
transport call-id
_____
0623458888 example.com 2863 172.30.18.22
            1E83ECF0-AF0611E7-802B8FCF-594EB9E7@122.50.18.22
UDP
```

Peer5-F#show vpn-sip registration-status

SIP registration of local number 0623458888 : registered 172.30.18.22

Session stuck in Negotiating IKE state

Symptom

VPN-SIP session stuck in Negotiating IKE state.

```
Peer5#show vpn-sip session remote-number 0612349999 detail
VPN-SIP session current status
Interface: Tunnel4
    Session status: NEGOTIATING_IKE (R)
    Uptime : 00:00:58
    Remote number : 0612349999
    Local number : 0623458888
    Remote address:port: 172.30.168.3:24825
    Local address:port: 172.30.168.3:24825
    Local address:port : 172.30.18.22:50012
    Crypto conn handle: 0x8000002E
    SIP Handle : 0x800000C
    SIP callID : 16
    Configured/Negotiated bandwidth: 1000/1000 kbps
```

Possible Cause

peer peer6

Bad configuration related to IKEv2.

In the following example the Key ID that is configured in the keyring does not match the SIP number of the remote peer.

```
Peer5-F#show running-config interface tunnel 4
Building configuration...
Current configuration : 276 bytes
interface Tunnel4
ip address 10.4.4.4 255.0.0.0
 tunnel source Loopback11
tunnel mode ipsec ipv4
tunnel destination dynamic
tunnel protection ipsec profile test-prof ikev2-profile test
VPN-SIP local-number 0623458888 remote-number 0612349999 bandwidth 1000 ====> Remote
number mentioned here doesn't match the remote number in the keyring
end
IKEv2 Keyring configs:
crypto ikev2 keyring keys
peer peer1
 identity key-id 0312341111
 pre-shared-key psk1
 Т
peer abc
 identity key-id 0345674444
 pre-shared-key psk1
 1
peer peer2
 identity key-id 0334563333
 pre-shared-key psk10337101690
 1
```

L

```
identity key-id 0634567777
 pre-shared-key cisco123
 1
peer peer3
 identity key-id 0323452222
 pre-shared-key cisco123
 1
peer peer4
 identity key-id 0645676666
 pre-shared-key psk1
 !
peer NONID
 identity fqdn example.com
 pre-shared-key psk1
1
!
!
crypto ikev2 profile test
match identity remote any
identity local key-id 0623458888
authentication remote pre-share
authentication local pre-share
keyring local keys
dpd 10 6 periodic
nat force-encap
```

Recommended Action

Correct the keyring configurations.

```
rypto ikev2 keyring keys
peer peerl
 identity key-id 0312341111
 pre-shared-key psk1
 !
peer abc
 identity key-id 0345674444
 pre-shared-key psk1
 1
peer peer2
 identity key-id 0334563333
 pre-shared-key psk1
 1
peer peer6
 identity key-id 0634567777
 pre-shared-key psk1
 1
peer peer3
 identity key-id 0323452222
 pre-shared-key psk1
 1
peer peer4
 identity key-id 0612349999
 pre-shared-key psk1
peer NONID
 identity fqdn example.com
 pre-shared-key psk1
 1
!
T.
crypto ikev2 profile test
match identity remote any
identity local key-id 0623458888
authentication remote pre-share
```

```
authentication local pre-share
keyring local keys
dpd 10 6 periodic
nat force-encap
T.
Peer5-F#show vpn-sip session remote-number 0612349999 detail
VPN-SIP session current status
Interface: Tunnel4
   Session status: SESSION UP (R)
   Uptime : 00:02:04
   Remote number : 0612349999
   Local number : 0623458888
   Remote address:port: 172.30.168.3:24845
   Local address:port : 172.30.18.22:50020
   Crypto conn handle: 0x8000004E
   SIP Handle : 0x80000014
SIP callID : 24
   Configured/Negotiated bandwidth: 1000/1000 kbps
```

Troubleshooting Session Initiation

Symptom

Session does not initiate and gets stuck in Negotiating IKE state

Possible Cause

Fagmentation of IKE packets when a large PKI certificate is included in the IKE authentication message.

Recommended Action

Configure IKEv2 fragmentation on the routers.

Debug Commands

The folllwing debug commands are available to debug VPN-SIP configuration:

Table 10: debug commands

Command Name	Description
debug vpn-sip event	Prints debug messages for SVTI registration with VPN-SIP, SIP registration, call setup, and so on.
debug vpn-sip errors	Prints error messages only when an error occurs during initialization, registration, call setup, and so on.
debug vpn-sip sip all	Enables all SIP debugging traces.
debug vpn-sip sip calls	Enables SIP SPI calls debugging trace.
debug vpn-sip sip dhcp	Enables SIP-DHCP debugging trace
debug vpn-sip sip error	Enables SIP error debugging trace
debug vpn-sip sip events	Enables SIP events debugging trace.

Command Name	Description
debug vpn-sip sip feature	Enables feature level debugging.
debug vpn-sip sip function	Enables SIP function debugging trace.
debug vpn-sip sip info	Enables SIP information debugging trace.
debug vpn-sip sip level	Enables information level debugging.
debug vpn-sip sip media	Enables SIP media debugging trace.
debug vpn-sip sip messages	Enables SIP SPI messages debugging trace
debug vpn-sip sip non-call	Enables Non-Call-Context trace (OPTIONS, SUBSCRIBE, and so on)
debug vpn-sip sip preauth	Enable SIP preauth debugging trace.
debug vpn-sip sip states	Enable SIP SPI states debugging trace.
debug vpn-sip sip translate	Enables SIP translation debugging trace.
debug vpn-sip sip transport	Enables SIP transport debugging traces.
debug vpn-sip sip verbose	Enables verbose mode.

Additional References for VPN-SIP

Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
Cisco IOS commands	Cisco IOS Master Command List, All Releases

Standards and RFCs

Standard/RFC	Title
RFC 6193 (with	Media Description for the Internet Key Exchange Protocol (IKE) in the Session
Restrictions)	Description Protocol (SDP)

Feature Information for VPN-SIP

Table 11: Feature Information for VPN-SIP

Feature Name	Releases	Feature Information
Session Initiation Protocol Triggered VPN	Cisco IOS Release 15.7(3)M1	VPN-SIP is a service offered by service providers where a VPN is setup for on-demand media or application sharing between peers, using Session Initiation Protocol (SIP).
		The following commands were introduced: nat force-encap , show vpn-sip session , show vpn-sip sip , show vpn-sip registration-status , vpn-sip local-number , vpn-sip logging , vpn-sip tunnel source .